

TPM Main

Part 1 Design Principles

Specification Version 1.2
Revision 94
29 March 2006

Contact: tpmwg@trustedcomputinggroup.org

TCG Published

Copyright © TCG 2003 - 2006

TCG

Copyright © 2003-2006 Trusted Computing Group, Incorporated.

Disclaimer

THIS SPECIFICATION IS PROVIDED "AS IS" WITH NO WARRANTIES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING ANY WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, NONINFRINGEMENT, FITNESS FOR ANY PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OR ANY WARRANTY OTHERWISE ARISING OUT OF ANY PROPOSAL, SPECIFICATION OR SAMPLE. Without limitation, TCG disclaims all liability, including liability for infringement of any proprietary rights, relating to use of information in this specification and to the implementation of this specification, and TCG disclaims all liability for cost of procurement of substitute goods or services, lost profits, loss of use, loss of data or any incidental, consequential, direct, indirect, or special damages, whether under contract, tort, warranty or otherwise, arising in any way out of use or reliance upon this specification or any information herein.

No license, express or implied, by estoppel or otherwise, to any TCG or TCG member intellectual property rights is granted herein.

Except that a license is hereby granted by TCG to copy and reproduce this specification for internal use only.

Contact the Trusted Computing Group at www.trustedcomputinggroup.org for information on specification licensing through membership agreements.

Any marks and brands contained herein are the property of their respective owners.

Acknowledgement

TCG wishes to thank all those who contributed to this specification. This version builds on the work published in version 1.1 and those who helped on that version have helped on this version.

A special thank you goes to the members of the TPM workgroup who had early access to this version and made invaluable contributions, corrections and support.

David Grawrock

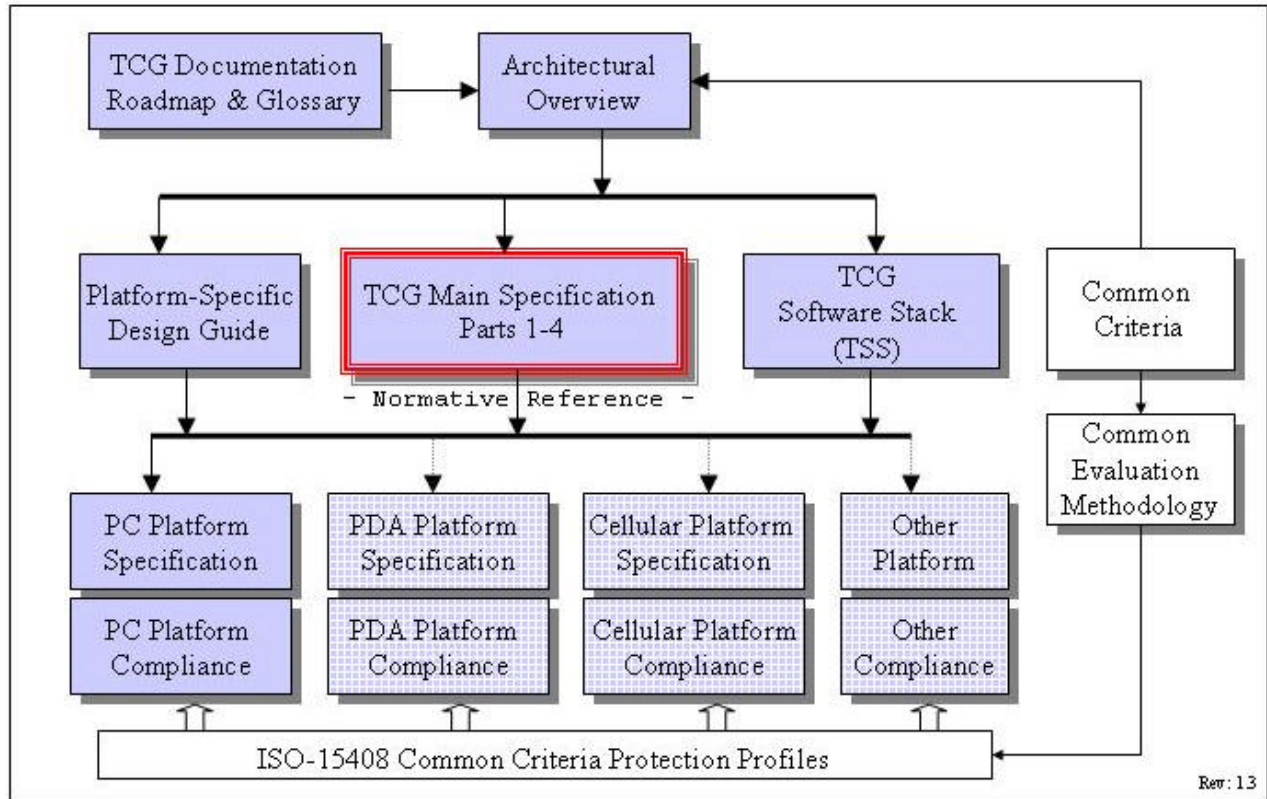
TPM Workgroup chair

Change History

Version	Date	Description
Rev 50	Jun 2003	Started 30 Jun 2003 by David Grawrock First cut at the design principles
Rev 52	Jul 2003	Started 15 Jul 2003 by David Grawrock Moved
Rev 58	Aug 2003	Started 27 Aug 2003 by David Grawrock All emails through 28 August 2003 New delegation from Graeme merged
Rev 62	Oct 2003	Approved by WG, TC and Board as public release of 1.2
Rev 63	Oct 2003	Started 2 Oct 2003 by David Grawrock Kerry email 7 Oct "Various items in rev62" kerry email 10 Oct "Other issues in rev 62" Changes to audit generation
Rev 64	Oct 2003	Started 12 Oct 2003 by David Grawrock Removed PCRWRITE usage in the NV write commands Added locality to transport_out log Disable readpubek now set in takeownership. DisableReadpubek now deprecated, as the functionality is moot. Oshrats email regarding DSAPI/OSAP sessions and the invalidation of them on delegation changes Changes for CMK commands. Oshrats email with minor 63 comments
Rev 65	Nov 2003	Action in NV_DefineSpace to ignore the Booleans in the input structure (Kerry email of 10/30) Transport changes from markus 11/6 email Set rules for encryption of parameters for OIAP,OSAP and DSAP Rewrote section on debug PCR to specify that the platform spec must indicate which register is the debug PCR Orlando FIF decisions CMK changes from Graeme
Rev 66	Nov 2003	Comment that OSAP tied to owner delegation needs to be treated internally in the TPM as a DSAP session Minor edits from Monty Added new GetCapability as requested by PC Specific WG Added new DP section that shows mandatory and optional Oshrat email of 11/27 Change PCR attributes to use locality selection instead of an array of BOOL's Removed transport sessions as something to invalidate when a resource type is flushed. Oshrat email of 12/3 added checks for NV_Locked in the NV commands Additional emails from the WG for minor editing fixes
Rev 67	Dec 2003	Made locality_modifier always a 1 size Changed NV index values to add the reserved bit. Also noticed that the previous NV index values were 10 bytes not 8. Edited them to correct size. Audit changes to ensure audit listed as optional and the previous commands properly deleted Added new OSAP authorization encryption. Changes made with new entity types, new section in DP (bottom of doc) and all command rewritten to check for the new encryption
Rev 68	Jan 2004	Added new section to identify all changes made for FIPS. Made some FIPS changes on creating and loading of keys Added change that OSAP encryption IV creation always uses both odd and even nonces Added SEALX ordinal and changes to TPM_STORED_DATA12 and seal/unseal to support this
Rev 69	Feb 2004	Fixup on stored_data12.

		Removed magic4 from the GPIO Added in section 34 of DP further discussion of versioning and getcap DP todo section cleaned up Changed store_privkey in migrate_asymkey Moved text for getcapabilities – hopefully it is easier to read and follow through on now.
Rev 70	Mar 2004	Rewrite structure doc on PCR selection usage. New getcap to answer questions regarding TPM support for pcr selection size
Rev 71	Mar 2004	Change terms from authorization data to AuthData.
Rev 72	Mar 2004	Zimmermann's changes for DAA Added TPM_Quote2, this includes new structure and ordinal Updated key usage table to include the 1.2 commands Added security properties section that links the main spec to the conformance WG guidelines (in section 1)
Rev 73	Apr 2004	Changed CMK_MigrateKey to use TPM_KEY12 and removed two input parameters Allowed TPM_Getcapability and TPM_GetTestResult to execute prior to TPM_Startup when in failure mode
Rev 74	May 2004	Minor editing to reflect comments on web site. Locked spec and submitted for IP review
Rev 76	Aug 2004	All comments from the WG Included new SetValue command and all of the indexes to make that work
Rev 77	Aug 2004	All comments from the WG
Rev 78	Oct 2004	Comments from WG. Added new getcaps to report and query current TPM version
Rev 82	Jan 2005	All changes from emails and minutes (I think).
Rev 84	Feb 2005	Final changes for 1.2 level 2
Rev 88	Aug 2005	Eratta level 2 release candidate
Rev 91	Sept. 2005	Update to Figure 9 (b) in section 9.2 by Tasneem Brutch

TCG Doc Roadmap – Main Spec



TCG Main Spec Roadmap

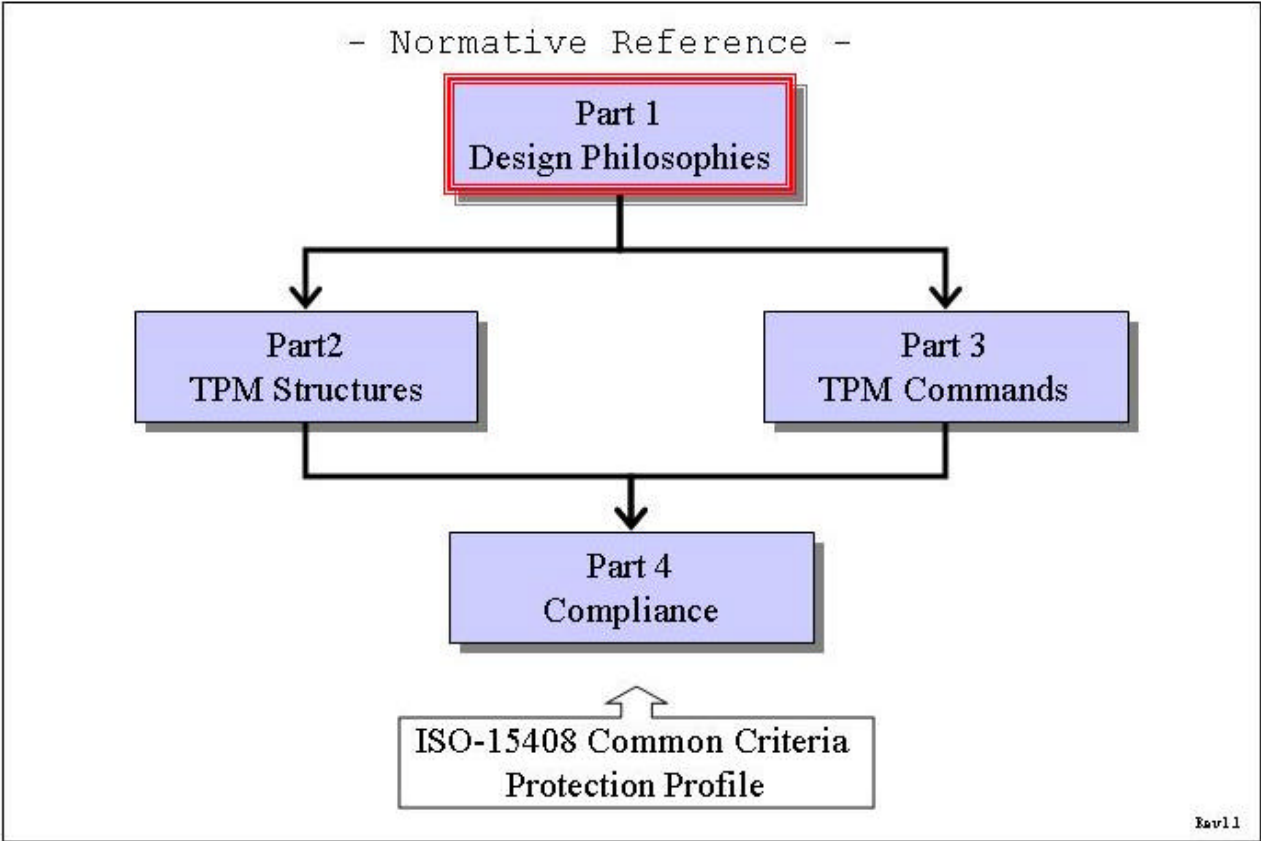


Table of Contents

1. Scope and Audience.....	1
1.1 Key words	1
1.2 Statement Type	1
2. Description.....	2
2.1 TODO (notes to keep the editor on track)	2
2.2 Questions	2
2.2.1 Delegation Questions	6
2.2.2 NV Questions.....	10
3. Protection	12
3.1 Introduction	12
3.2 Threat	13
3.3 Protection of functions	13
3.4 Protection of information	13
3.5 Side effects	14
3.6 Exceptions and clarifications.....	14
4. TPM Architecture.....	16
4.1 Interoperability.....	16
4.2 Components.....	16
4.2.1 Input and Output	17
4.2.2 Cryptographic Co-Processor	17
4.2.2.1 RSA Engine.....	18
4.2.2.2 Signature Operations	18
4.2.2.3 Symmetric Encryption Engine	18
4.2.2.4 Using Keys	19
4.2.3 Key Generation.....	19
4.2.3.1 Asymmetric – RSA	20
4.2.3.2 Nonce Creation.....	20
4.2.4 HMAC Engine.....	20
4.2.5 Random Number Generator	21
4.2.5.1 Entropy Source and Collector.....	22
4.2.5.2 State Register.....	22
4.2.5.3 Mixing Function	23
4.2.5.4 RNG Reset	23
4.2.6 SHA-1 Engine.....	23
4.2.7 Power Detection.....	24

4.2.8	Opt-In	24
4.2.9	Execution Engine	25
4.2.10	Non-Volatile Memory	26
4.3	Data Integrity Register (DIR)	26
4.4	Platform Configuration Register (PCR)	26
5.	Endorsement Key Creation	29
5.1	Controlling Access to PRIVEK	29
5.2	Controlling Access to PUBEK	30
6.	Attestation Identity Keys	31
7.	TPM Ownership	32
7.1	Platform Ownership and Root of Trust for Storage	32
8.	Authentication and Authorization Data	33
8.1	Dictionary Attack Considerations	34
9.	TPM Operation	36
9.1	TPM Initialization & Operation State Flow	37
9.1.1	Initialization	37
9.2	Self-Test Modes	39
9.2.1	Operational Self-Test	41
9.3	Startup	45
9.4	Operational Mode	45
9.4.1	Enabling a TPM	47
9.4.2	Activating a TPM	48
9.4.3	Taking TPM Ownership	49
9.4.3.1	Enabling Ownership	50
9.4.4	Transitioning Between Operational States	51
9.5	Clearing the TPM	51
10.	Physical Presence	53
11.	Root of Trust for Reporting (RTR)	55
11.1	Platform Identity	55
11.2	RTR to Platform Binding	56
11.3	Platform Identity and Privacy Considerations	56
11.4	Attestation Identity Keys	56
11.4.1	AIK Creation	57
11.4.2	AIK Storage	58
12.	Root of Trust for Storage (RTS)	59
12.1	Loading and Unloading Blobs	59
13.	Transport Sessions and Authorization Protocols	60

13.1	Authorization Session Setup.....	62
13.2	Parameter Declarations for OIAP and OSAP Examples.....	63
13.2.1	Object-Independent Authorization Protocol (OIAP).....	65
13.3	Object-Specific Authorization Protocol (OSAP).....	67
13.4	Authorization Session Handles.....	71
13.5	Authorization-Data Insertion Protocol (ADIP).....	72
13.6	AuthData Change Protocol (ADCP).....	75
13.7	Asymmetric Authorization Change Protocol (AACP).....	76
14.	FIPS 140 Physical Protection.....	77
14.1	TPM Profile for FIPS Certification.....	77
15.	Maintenance.....	78
15.1	Field Upgrade.....	79
16.	Proof of Locality.....	81
17.	Monotonic Counter.....	82
18.	Transport Protection.....	85
18.1	Transport encryption and authorization.....	87
18.1.1	MGF1 parameters.....	89
18.1.2	HMAC calculation.....	89
18.1.3	Transport log creation.....	90
18.1.4	Additional Encryption Mechanisms.....	90
18.2	Transport Error Handling.....	90
18.3	Exclusive Transport Sessions.....	91
18.4	Transport Audit Handling.....	92
18.4.1	Auditing of wrapped commands.....	92
19.	Audit Commands.....	94
19.1	Audit Monotonic Counter.....	96
20.	Design Section on Time Stamping.....	97
20.1	Tick Components.....	97
20.2	Basic Tick Stamp.....	98
20.3	Associating a TCV with UTC.....	98
20.4	Additional Comments and Questions.....	100
21.	Context Management.....	103
22.	Eviction.....	105
23.	Session pool.....	106
24.	Initialization Operations.....	107
25.	HMAC digest rules.....	109
26.	Generic authorization session termination rules.....	110

27. PCR Grand Unification Theory	111
27.1 Validate Key for use.....	114
28. Non Volatile Storage.....	116
28.1 NV storage design principles	117
28.1.1 NV Storage use models.....	117
28.2 Use of NV storage during manufacturing	119
29. Delegation Model	120
29.1 Table Requirements.....	120
29.2 How this works	121
29.3 Family Table.....	123
29.4 Delegate Table	124
29.5 Delegation Administration Control.....	125
29.5.1 Control in Phase 1.....	126
29.5.2 Control in Phase 2.....	127
29.5.3 Control in Phase 3.....	127
29.6 Family Verification	127
29.7 Use of commands for different states of TPM	129
29.8 Delegation Authorization Values	129
29.8.1 Using the authorization value	130
29.9 DSAP description	130
30. Physical Presence.....	134
30.1 Use of Physical Presence.....	134
31. TPM Internal Asymmetric Encryption	136
31.1.1 TPM_ES_RSAESOAEP_SHA1_MGF1.....	136
31.1.2 TPM_ES_RSAESPKCSV15.....	137
31.1.3 TPM_ES_SYM_CNT.....	137
31.1.4 TPM_ES_SYM_OFB.....	137
31.2 TPM Internal Digital Signatures	138
31.2.1 TPM_SS_RSASSAPKCS1v15_SHA1.....	138
31.2.2 TPM_SS_RSASSAPKCS1v15_DER.....	138
31.2.3 TPM_SS_RSASSAPKCS1v15_INFO	138
31.2.4 Use of Signature Schemes	138
32. Key Usage Table	140
33. Direct Anonymous Attestation	142
33.1 TPM_DAA_JOIN	142
33.2 TPM_DAA_Sign	144
33.3 DAA Command summary.....	144

33.3.1	TPM setup	145
33.3.2	JOIN.....	145
33.3.3	SIGN.....	149
34.	General Purpose IO.....	152
35.	Redirection.....	153
36.	Structure Versioning	154
37.	Certified Migration Key Type	156
37.1	Certified Migration Requirements.....	156
37.2	Key Creation	157
37.3	Migrate CMK to a MA.....	157
37.4	Migrate CMK to a MSA.....	158
38.	Revoke Trust.....	159
39.	Mandatory and Optional Functional Blocks.....	161
40.	Optional Authentication Encryption	164
41.	1.1a and 1.2 Differences	166

1. Scope and Audience

The TPCA main specification is an industry specification that enables trust in computing platforms in general. The main specification is broken into parts to make the role of each document clear. A version of the specification (like 1.2) requires all parts to be a complete specification.

A TPM designer **MUST** be aware that for a complete definition of all requirements necessary to build a TPM, the designer **MUST** use the appropriate platform specific specification for all TPM requirements.

1.1 Key words

The key words “**MUST**,” “**MUST NOT**,” “**REQUIRED**,” “**SHALL**,” “**SHALL NOT**,” “**SHOULD**,” “**SHOULD NOT**,” “**RECOMMENDED**,” “**MAY**,” and “**OPTIONAL**” in the chapters 2-10 normative statements are to be interpreted as described in [RFC-2119].

1.2 Statement Type

Please note a very important distinction between different sections of text throughout this document. You will encounter two distinctive kinds of text: informative comment and normative statements. Because most of the text in this specification will be of the kind normative statements, the authors have informally defined it as the default and, as such, have specifically called out text of the kind informative comment. They have done this by flagging the beginning and end of each informative comment and highlighting its text in gray. This means that unless text is specifically marked as of the kind informative comment, you can consider it of the kind normative statements.

For example:

Start of informative comment

This is the first paragraph of 1–n paragraphs containing text of the kind *informative comment* ...

This is the second paragraph of text of the kind *informative comment* ...

This is the nth paragraph of text of the kind *informative comment* ...

To understand the TCG specification the user **MUST** read the specification. (This use of **MUST** does not require any action).

End of informative comment

This is the first paragraph of one or more paragraphs (and/or sections) containing the text of the kind normative statements ...

To understand the TCG specification the user **MUST** read the specification. (This use of **MUST** indicates a keyword usage and requires an action).

35 2. Description

36 The design principles give the basic concepts of the TPM and generic information relative to
37 TPM functionality.

38 A TPM designer MUST review and implement the information in the TPM Main specification
39 (parts 1-4) and review the platform specific document for the intended platform. The
40 platform specific document will contain normative statements that affect the design and
41 implementation of a TPM.

42 A TPM designer MUST review and implement the requirements, including testing and
43 evaluation, as set by the TCG Conformance Workgroup. The TPM MUST comply with the
44 requirements and pass any evaluations set by the Conformance Workgroup. The TPM MAY
45 undergo more stringent testing and evaluation.

46 The question section keeps track of questions throughout the development of the
47 specification and hence can have information that is no longer current or moot. The
48 purpose of the questions is to track the history of various decisions in the specification to
49 allow those following behind to gain some insight into the committees thinking on various
50 points.

51 2.1 TODO (notes to keep the editor on track)

52

53 2.2 Questions

54 How to version the flag structures?

55 I suggest that we simply put the version into the structure and pass it back in the
56 structure. Add the version information into the persistent and volatile flag structures.

57 When using the encryption transport failures are easy to see. Also the watcher on the line
58 can tell where the error occurred. If the failure occurs at the transport level the response
59 is an error (small packet) and it is in the clear. If the error occurs during execution of the
60 command then the response is a small encrypted packet. Should we expand the packet
61 size or simply let this go through?

62 Not an issue.

63 Do we restrict the loading of a counter to once per TPM_Startup(Clear)?

64 Yes once a counter is set it must remain the same until the next successful startup.

65 Does the time stamp work as a change on the tag or as a wrapped command like the
66 transport protection.

67 While possibly easier at the HW level the tag mechanism seems to be harder at the SW
68 level as to what commands are sent to the TPM. The issue of how the SW presents
69 the TS session to the SW writer is not an issue. This is due to the fact that however
70 the session is presented to the SW writer the writer must take into account which
71 commands are being time stamped and how to manage the log etc. So accepting a
72 mechanism that is easy for the HW developer and having the SW manage the
73 interface is a sufficient direction.

- 74 When returning time information do we return the entire time structure or just the time
75 and have the caller obtain all the information with a GetCap call?
- 76 All time returns will use the entire structure with all the details.
- 77 Do we want to return a real clock value or a value with some additional bits (like a
78 monotonic value with a time value)?
- 79 Add a count value into the time structure.
- 80 Do we need NTP or is SNTP sufficient?
- 81 The TPM will not run the time protocol itself. What the TPM will do is accept a value
82 from outside software and a hash of the protocols that produced the value. This
83 allows the platform to use whatever they want to set the value from secure time to
84 the local PC clock.
- 85 Can an owner destroy a TPM by issuing repeated CreateCounter commands?
- 86 A TPM may place a throttle on this command to avoid burn issues. It MUST not be
87 possible to burn out the TPM counter under normal operating conditions. The
88 CreateCounter command is limited to only once per successful
89 TPM_Startup(ST_CLEAR).
- 90 This answer is now somewhat moot as the command to createcounter is now owner
91 authorized. This allows the owner to decide when to authorize the counter creation.
92 As there are only 4 counters available it is not an issue with having the owner
93 continue to authorize counters.
- 94 What happens to a transport session (log etc.) on an S3?
- 95 Should these be the same as the authorization sessions? The saving of a transport
96 session across S3 is not a security concern but is a memory concern. The TPM MUST
97 clear the transport session on TPM_Startup(CLEAR) and MAY clear the session on
98 TPM_Startup(any).
- 99 While you can't increment or create a new counter after startup can you read a counter
100 other than the active one?
- 101 You may read other counters
- 102 When we audit a command that is not authorized should we hash the parameters and
103 provide that as part of the audit event, currently they are set to null.
- 104 We should hash parameters of non-authorized commands
- 105 There is a fundamental problem with the encryption of commands in the transport and
106 auditing. If we cover a command we have no way to audit, if we show the command then
107 it isn't protected. Can we expose the command (ordinal) and not the parameters?
- 108 If the owner has requested that a function be audited then the execute transport return
109 will include sufficient information to produce the audit entry.
- 110 How to set the time in the audit structure and tell the log what is going on.
- 111 The time in the audit structure is set to nulls except when audit occurs as part of a
112 transport session. In that case the audit command is set from the time value in the
113 TPM.

- 114 Is there a limit to the number of locality modifiers?
- 115 Yes, the TPM need only support a maximum of 4 modifiers. The definition of the
116 modifiers is always a platform specific issue.
- 117 How do we evict various resources?
- 118 There are numerous eviction routines in the current spec. We will deprecate the various
119 types and move to TPM_Flushxxx for all resource types.
- 120 Can you flush a saved context?
- 121 Yes, you must be able to invalidate saved contexts. This would be done by making sure
122 that the TPM could not load any saved context.
- 123 What is the value of maintaining the clock value when the time is not incrementing? Can
124 this be due to the fact that the time is now known to be at least after the indicated time?
- 125 Moot point now as we don't keep the clock value at
- 126 Should we change the current structures and add the tag?
- 127 TODO
- 128 Can we have a bank of bits (change bit locality) for each of the 4 levels of locality?
- 129 Now
- 130 How do we find out what sessions are active? Do we care?
- 131 I would say yes we care and we should use the same mechanism that we do for the keys.
132 A GetCap that will return the handles.
- 133 Can we limit the transport sessions to only one?
- 134 No, we should have as a minimum 2 sessions. One gets into deadlocks and such so the
135 minimum should be 2.
- 136 Does the TPM need to keep the audit structure or can it simply keep a hash?
- 137 The TPM just keeps the audit digest and no other information.
- 138 What happens to an OSAP session if the key associated with it is taken off chip with a
139 "SaveContext"? What happens if the key saveContext occurs after an OSAP auth context
140 that is already off chip? How do you later connect the key to the auth session (without
141 having to store all sorts of things on chip)? Are we really honestly convinced that we've
142 thought of all the possible ramifications of saving and restoring auth sessions? And is it
143 really true that all the things we say about a saved auth session do/should apply to a
144 saved key (which is to say is there really a single loadContext command and a single
145 context structure)?
- 146 Saved context a reliable indication of the linkage between the OSAP and the key. When
147 saving save auth then key, on load key then auth. Auth session checks for the key
148 and if not found fails.
- 149 Why is addNonce an output of 16.5 loadContext?
- 150 If it's wrong, it's a little late to find out now - why not have it as an input and have the
151 TPM return an error if the encrypted addNonce doesn't match the input? The thought
152 was that the nonce area might not be a nonce but was information that the caller

- 153 could put in. If they use it as a nonce fine, but they could also use it as a label or
154 sequence number or ... any value the caller wanted
- 155 Is there a memory endurance problem with contextNonceSession?
156 contextNonceSession does not have to be saved across S3 states so there is no
157 endurance problem.
- 158 Is there a memory endurance problem with contextNonceKey?
159 contextNonceKey only changes on TPM_Startup(ST_Clear) so it's endurance is the same
160 as a PCR.
- 161 The debate continues about restoring a resource's handle during TPM_LoadContext.
162 Debate ends by having the load context be informed of what the loaders opinion is about
163 the handle. The requestor can indicate that it wishes the same handle and if the TPM
164 can perform that task it does, if it cannot then the load fails.
- 165 Interesting attack is now available with the new audit close flag on get audit signed. Anyone
166 with access to a signing key can close the audit log. The only requirement on the
167 command is that the key be authorized. While there is no loss of information (as the
168 attacker can always destroy the external log) does the closing of a log make things look
169 different. This does enable a burn out attack. The ability to closeAudit enables a new
170 DenialOfService attack.
- 171 Resolution: The TPM Owner owns the audit process, so the TPM Owner should have
172 exclusive control over closeAudit. Hence the signing key used to closeAudit must be
173 an AIK. Note that the owner can choose to give this AIK's AuthData value to the OS,
174 so that the OS can automatically close an audit session during platform power down.
175 But such operations are outside this specification.
- 176 Should we keep the E function in the tick counter?
177 From Graeme, I would prefer to see these calculations deleted. The calculation starts
178 with one assertion and derives a contradictory assertion. Generally, there seems little
179 value in trying to derive an equality relationship when nothing is known about the
180 path to and from the Time Authority.
- 181 What is the difference between DIR_Quote and DirReadSigned?
182 Appears to be none so DIR_Quote deleted
- 183 The tickRate parameter associates tick with seconds and has no way to indicate that the
184 rate is greater than one second. Is this OK?
185 Do we need to allow for tick rates that are slower than once per second. We report in
186 nanoseconds.
- 187 The TPM MUST support a minimum of 2 authorization sessions. Where do we put this
188 requirement in the spec?
- 189 Can we find a use for the DIR and BIT areas for locality 0?
190 They have no protections so in many ways they are just extra. We leave this as it is as
191 locality 0 may mean something else on a platform other than a PC.
- 192 How do we send back the transport log information on each execute transport?

193 It is 64 bytes in length and would make things very difficult to include on every
194 command. Change wrappedaudit to be input params, add output params and the
195 caller has all information necessary to create the structure to add into the digest.

196 The transport log structure is a single structure used both for input and output with the
197 only difference being the setting of ticks to 0 on input and a real value on output, do we
198 need two structures.

199 I believe that a single structure is fine

200 For TPM_Startup(ST_Clear) I added that all keys would be flushed. Is this right?

201 Yes

202 Why have 2 auths for release transport signed? It is an easy attack to simply kill the
203 session.

204 The reason is that an attacker can close the session and get a signature of the session
205 log. We are currently not sure of the level of this attack but by having the creator of
206 the session authorize the signing of the log it is completely avoided.

207 19.3 Action 3 (startup/state) doesn't reference the situation where there is no saved state.
208 My presumption is that you can still run startup/clear, but maybe you have to do a
209 hardware reset?

210 DWG I don't think so. This could be an attack and a way to get the wrong PCR values
211 into the system. The BIOS is taking one path and may not set PCR values. Hence the
212 response is to go into failed selftest mode.

213 What happens to a transport session if a command clears the TPM like revokeTrust

214 This is fine. The transport session is not complete but the session protected the
215 information till the command that changed the TPM. It is impossible to get a log from
216 the session or to sign the session but that is what the caller wanted.

217 2.2.1 Delegation Questions

218 Is loading the table by untrusted process ok? Does this cause a problem when the new table
219 is loaded and permissions change?

220 Yes, the fill table can be done by any process. A TPM Owner wishing to validate the table
221 can perform the operations necessary to gain assurance of the table entries.

222 Are the permissions for a table row sensitive?

223 Currently we believe not but there are some attack models that knowing the permissions
224 makes the start of the attack easier. It does not make the success of the attack any
225 easier. Example if I know that a single process is the only process in the table that
226 has the CreateAIK capability then the attacker only attempts to break into the single
227 process and not all others.

228 What software is in use to modify the table?

229 The table can be updated by any software or process given the capability to manage the
230 table. Three likely sources of the software would be a BIOS process, an applet of a
231 trusted process and a standalone self-booting (from CD-ROM) management
232 application.

233 Who holds the TPM Owner password?

- 234 There is no change to the holding of the TPM Owner token. The permissions do allow the
235 creation of an application that sets the TPM Owner token to a random value and
236 then seals the value to the application.
- 237 How are these changes created such that there is minimal change to the current TPM?
238 This works by using the current authorization process and only making changes in the
239 authorization and not for each and every command.
- 240 What about S3 and other events?
241 Permissions, once granted, are non-volatile.
- 242 The permission bit to changeOwnerAuth (bit 11) gives rise to the functionality that the SW
243 that has this bit can control the TPM completely. This includes removing control from
244 the TPM Owner as the TPM Owner value will now be a random value only known to SW.
245 There are use models where this is good and bad, do we want this functionality?
- 246 Pros and cons of physical enable table when TPM Owner is present – Pro physically present
247 user can make SW play fair. Con – physically present user can override the desires of a
248 TPM Owner.
- 249 Do we need to reset TPM_PERMISSION_KEY at some time?
250 We know that the key is NOT reset on TPM_ClearOwner.
- 251 What is the meaning of using permission table in an OIAP and OSAP mode?
252 Delegate table can be used in either OIAP or OSAP mode.
- 253 Can you grant permissions without assigning the permissions to a specific process?
254 Yes, do a SetRow with a PCR_SELECTION of null and the permissions are available to
255 any process.
- 256 Do we need a ClearTableOwner?
257 I would assert that we do not need this command. The TPM Owner can perform SetRow
258 with NULLS four times and creates the exact same thing. Not having this command
259 lowers the number of ordinals the TPM is required to support.
- 260 There are some issues with the currently defined behavior of familyID and the
261 verificationCount.
262 Talked to David for 30 mins. We decided that maxFamilyID is set to zero at
263 manufacture, and incremented for every FamTable_SetRow
264 It is the responsibility of DelTable_SetRow to set the appropriate familyID
265 DelTable_SetRow fails if the provided familyID is not active and present somewhere in
266 the FamTable
267 FillTable works differently. It effectively resets the family table (invalidating all active
268 rows) and sets up as many rows as are needed based on the number of families
269 specified in FillTable
270 This still needs a bit of work. Presumably the caller of FillTable uses a “fake” familyID,
271 and this is changed to the actual familyID when the fill happens
272 There are some issues with the verificationCount.

273 Uber-issue. If none of the rows in the table are allowed to create other rows and export
274 them, then the “sign” of the table is meaningful

275 If one of the rows is allowed to create and export new rows, is there any real meaning to
276 “the current set of exported rows?” (i.e. SW can just up and make new rows).

277 Should section 4.4, TPM_DelTable_ClearTable), section 4.5 (TPM_DelTable_SetEnable), and
278 section 4.7 (TPM_DelTable_Set_Admin) all say “there must be UNAMBIGUOUS evidence
279 of the presence of physical access...” Is this okay?

280 Answer: No, group agreed to change UNAMBIGUOUS to BEST EFFORT in all three
281 sections.

282 Is FamilyID a sensitive value?

283 If so, why? Agreement: FamilyID is not a sensitive value.

284 Should TPM_TakeOwnership be included in permissions bits (see bit 12 in section 3.1)?

285 Enables a better administrative monitor and may enable user to take ownership easier.
286 Agreement leave it in and change informative comments to reflect the reasons.

287 [From the TPM_DelTable_SetRow command informative comments]: Note that there are two
288 types of rights: family rights (you can either edit your family’s rows or grab new rows)
289 and administrative rights.

290 This is really just an editor’s note, not a question to be resolved.

291 [From the TPM_DelTable_ExportRow command informational comments]:

292 Does not effect content of exported row left behind in the table;

293 Valid for all rows in the table;

294 Does not need to be OwnerAuth’d;

295 Family Rights are that family can only export a row from rows 0-3 if row belongs to the
296 family, but rows 4 and upwards can be exported by any Trusted Process, without any
297 family checking being done. This is really just an editor’s note, not a question to be
298 resolved.

299 When a Family Table row is set, the verificationCount is set to 1, make sure that is
300 consistently used in all other command actions.

301 Done.

302 SetEnable and SetEnableOwner enable and disable all rows in a table, not just the rows
303 belong to the family of the process that used the SetEnable and/or SetEnableOwner
304 commands. This is also true for SetAdmin and SetAdminOwner. Can anybody come up
305 with a use scenario where that causes any problems?

306 In command actions where the TPM must walk the delegation table looking for a
307 configuration that matches the command input parameters (PCRinfo and/or
308 authValues) and there are rows in the table with duplicate values, what does the TPM
309 do? Is there any reason not to use the rule “the TPM starts walking the table starting
310 with the first row and use the first row it finds with matching values”?

311 Answer to this question may mean change to pseudo code in section 2.3, Using the
312 AuthData Value, which currently shows the TPM walking the delegation table,
313 starting with the first row, and using the first row it finds with matching values.

- 314 What familyID value signals a family table row that is not in use/contains invalid values?
- 315 To get consistency in all the command Actions that use this, that FamilyID value has
316 been edited in all places to be NULL, instead of 0. Yes, FamilyID value of NULL
317 signals a family table row that is not in use or contains invalid values.
- 318 From section 2.4, Delegate Table Fill and Enablement: “The changing of a TPM Owner does
319 not automatically clear the delegate table. Changing a TPM Owner does disable all
320 current delegations, including exported rows, and requires the new TPM Owner to re-
321 enable the delegations in the table. The table entry values like trusted process
322 identification and delegations to that process are not effected by a change in owner. THE
323 AUTHDATA VALUES DO NOT SURVIVE THE OWNERSHIP CHANGE.” Question: If this is
324 true, no delegations work after a change of owner. How does the new owner set new
325 AuthData values?
- 326 The simple way of handling this is to get AdminMonitor to own backing up delegations at
327 first owner install and then be run by new owner, and AdminMonitor uses FillTable,
328 to handle “Owner migration.” Or, for another use option, is for second owner to pick-
329 up PCR-ID’s and delegations bits from previous owner – what is the most straight-
330 forward way to do this?
- 331 In section 3.1 (Delegate Definitions bit map table), several commands that do not require
332 owner authorization are in the table and can be delegated: TPM_SetTempDeactivated (bit
333 15), TPM_ReadPubek (bit 7), and TPM_LoadManuMaintPub (bit 3), Why?
- 334 In section 3.3 it is stated, “The Family ID resets to NULL on each change of TPM Owner.”
335 This invalidates all delegations. Is this what we want?
- 336 You don’t have to blow away FamilyID to blow away the blobs, because key is gone. So
337 this is not required – can eliminate these actions.
- 338 In section 3.12, why is TPM_DELEGATE_LABEL included in the table?
- 339 In section 4.2 (TPM_DelTable_FillTable), is it okay to delete requirement that delegate table
340 be empty? Also, in Action 14, now that we have both persistent and volatile tableAdmin
341 flags, should this command set volatile tableAdmin flag to FALSE upon completion?
- 342 The delegate table does not need to be empty to use the TPM_DelTable_FillTable
343 command, Also, a paragraph has been added to Informative comment for
344 TPM_DelTable_FillTable that points out usefulness of immediately following
345 TPM_DelTable_FillTable with TPM_Delegate_TempSetAdmin, to stop table
346 administration in the current boot cycle.
- 347 In section 4.15 (TPM_FamTable_IncrementCount), why does this command require
348 TPMOwner authorization, as currently documented in section 4.15?
- 349 IncrementCount is gated by tableAdmin, which seems sufficient, and use of ownerauth
350 makes it difficult to automatically verify a table using a CDROM.
- 351 In section 4.3 (TPM_DelTable_FillTableOwner), in the Action 3d, use OTP[80] = MFG(x1) in
352 place of oneTimePad[n] = SHA1(x1 || seed[n]))?,
353 yes.
- 354 In section 4.9 (TPM_DelTable_SetRow), is invalidateRow input parameter really needed?
355 It is only used in action 5. Couldn’t action 5 simply read “Set N1 -> familyID = NULL”?

356 There is no easy way to generate a blob that can be used to delegate migration authority for
357 a user key.

358 This is because the TPM does not store the migration authority on the chip as the
359 migration command involves an encrypted key, not a loaded one. One could invent a
360 'CreateMigrationDelegationBlob' that took the encrypted key as input and generated
361 the encrypted delegation blob as output, but it would not be pretty. Sorry Dave .

362 If a delegate row in NV memory (nominally 4 rows) is to refer to a user key (instead of owner
363 auth), then it needs to include a hash of the public key. It could be that the NV table is
364 restricted to owner auth delegations, this would save 80 bytes of NV store and also
365 simplify the LoadBlob command.

366 Maybe would simplify other things. I would definitely NOT permit user keys in the table
367 to be run with the legacy OSAP and OIAP ordinals.

368 A few more GetCapability values are also required, the usual constants that we discussed
369 and also the two readTable caps.

370 TBD Verify that Delegate Table Management commands (see section 2.8) cover all the
371 functionality of obsolete or updated commands.

372 Redefine bits 16 and above in Delegation Definitions table (section 3.1). In particular, can
373 new command set (with TPM_FAMILY_OPERATION options as defined in section 3.20) be
374 delegated individually and appropriately. Also, how many user key authorized
375 commands will be delegated?

376 Is new TPM_FAMILY_FLAGS field of family table (defined in section 3.5) sensitive data?

377 DSAP informative comment needs to be completed (section 4.1). In particular, does the
378 statement "The DSAP command works like OSAP except it takes an encrypted blob - an
379 encrypted delegate table row -- as input" sufficient? Or do some particular differences
380 between DSAP and OSAP have to be pointed out in this informative comment??

381 The TPM_Delegate_LoadBlob[Owner] commands cannot be used to load key delegation blobs
382 into the TPM. Is another ordinal required to do that?

383 Is it okay for TPM_Delegate_LoadBlob[Owner] commands to ignore enable/disable
384 use/admin flags in family table rows?

385 Is it wise to delegate TPM_DelTable_ConvertBlob command (defined in section 4.11)? Does
386 current definition of this command support section 2.7 scenarios?

387 Is there a privacy problem with DelTable_ReadRow since the contents may not be identical
388 from TPM to TPM?

389 Are DSAP sessions being pooled with the other sessions? if so, can one save \load them by
390 context functions? if not, then there should be a restriction in saveContext.

391 DSAP are "normal" authorization sessions and would save/load with OIAP and OSAP
392 sessions

393 2.2.2 NV Questions

394 You would set this by using a new ordinal that is unauthorized and only turns the flag on to
395 lock everything. Yet another ordinal? Do we need it? Is this an important functionality
396 for the uses we see?

397 Yes this allows us to have "close" to writeonce functionality. What the functionality
398 would be is that the RTM would assure that the proper information is present in the
399 TPM and then "lock" the area. One could create this functionality by having the RTM
400 change the authorization each time but then you would need to eat more NV store so
401 save the sealed AuthData value. I think that is easier to have an ordinal than eat the
402 NV space and require a much more complex programming model.

403 Is it OK to have an element partially written?

404 Given that we have chunks there has to be a mechanism to allow partial writes.

405 If an element is partially written, how does a caller know that more needs to be written?

406 I would say the use model that provides the ability to write - read, in a loop is just not
407 supported. Get it all written and then do the read.

408 Usage of the lock bit: as you wrote, the RTM would assure that the proper information is
409 present in the TPM and then "lock" the area. so why in action #4 we should also check
410 bWritten when the lock bit is set? should be as action #3b of TPM_NV_DefineSpace, if
411 lock is set - return error

412 [Grawrock, David] Not quite, the use model I was trying to create was the one where the
413 TPM was locked and the user was attempting to add a new area. If the locked bit
414 doesn't allow for writing once to a new area, one must reboot to perform the write
415 and also tell the RTM what the value to write must be. So this allows the creator of
416 an area to write it once and then it flows with the locked bit.

417 Can you delete a NV value with only physical presence?

418 [Grawrock, David] You can't delete with physical presence, you must use owner
419 authorization. This I think is a reasonable restriction to avoid burn problems.

420 Why is there no check on the writes for a TPM Owner?

421 The check for an owner occurred during the TPM_NV_DefineSpace. It is imperative that
422 the TPM_NV_DefineSpace set in place the appropriate restrictions to limit the
423 potential for attacks on the NV storage area.

424 Description of maxNVBufSize is confusing to me. Why is this value related to the input size?
425 And since there is no longer any 'written' bits, why is there a maximum area size at all?

426 [Grawrock, David] This is a fixed size and set by the TPM manufacturer. I would see
427 values like the input buffer, transport sessions etc all coming up with the max size
428 the TPM can handle. This does NOT indicate what is available on the TPM right now.
429 The TPM could have 4k of space but max size would be 782 and would always report
430 that number. If the available space fell to 20 bytes this value would still be 782.

431 If the storage area is an opaque area to the TPM (as described), then how does the TPM
432 know what PCR registers have been used to seal a blob?

433 The VALUES of the area are opaque, the attributes to control access are not. So if the
434 attributes indicate that PCR restrictions are in place the TPM keeps those PCR values
435 as part of the index attributes. This in reality seals the value as there is no need for
436 tpmProof since the value never leaves the TPM.

437 3. Protection

438 3.1 Introduction

439 **Start of informative comment**

440 The Protection Profile in the Conformance part of the specification defines the threats that
441 are resisted by a platform. This section, “Protection,” describes the properties of selected
442 capabilities and selected data locations within a TPM that has a Protection Profile and has
443 not been modified by physical means.

444 This section introduces the concept of protected capabilities and the concept of shielded
445 locations for data. The ordinal set defined in part II and III is the set of protected
446 capabilities. The data structures in part II define the shielded locations.

447 • A protected capability is one whose correct operation is necessary in order for the
448 operation of the TCG Subsystem to be trusted.

449 • A shielded location is an area where data is protected against interference and prying,
450 independent of its form.

451 This specification uses the concept of protected capabilities so as to distinguish platform
452 capabilities that must be trustworthy. Trust in the TPM depends critically on the protected
453 capabilities. Platform capabilities that are not protected capabilities must (of course) work
454 properly if the TCG Subsystem is to function properly.

455 This specification uses the concept of shielded locations, rather than the concept of
456 “shielded data.” While the concept of shielded data is intuitive, it is extraordinarily difficult
457 to define because of the imprecise meaning of the word “data.” For example, consider data
458 that is produced in a safe location and then moved into ordinary storage. It is the same data
459 in both locations, but in one it is shielded data and in the other it is not. Also, data may not
460 always exist in the same form. For example, it may exist as vulnerable plaintext, but also
461 may sometimes be transformed into a logically protected form. This data continues to exist,
462 but doesn't always need to be shielded data - the vulnerable form needs to be shielded data,
463 but the logically protected form does not. If a specific form of data requires protection
464 against interference or prying, it is therefore necessary to say “if the data-D exists, it must
465 exist only in a shielded location.” A more concise expression is “the data-D must be extant
466 only in a shielded location.”

467 Hence, if trust in the TCG Subsystem depends critically on access to certain data, that data
468 should be extant only in a shielded location and accessible only to protected capabilities.
469 When not in use, such data could be erased after conversion (using a protected capability)
470 into another data structure. Unless the other data structure was defined as one that must
471 be held in a shielded location, it need not be held in a shielded location.

472 **End of informative comment**

473 1. The data structures described in part II of the TPM specifications **MUST NOT** be
474 instantiated in a TPM, except as data in TPM-shielded-locations.

475 2. The ordinal set defined in part II and III of the TPM specifications **MUST NOT** be
476 instantiated in a TPM, except as TPM-protected-capabilities.

477 3. Functions **MUST NOT** be instantiated in a TPM as TPM-protected-capabilities if they do
478 not appear in the ordinal set defined in part II and III of the TPM specifications.

479 **3.2 Threat**

480 **Start of informative comment**

481 This section, “Threat,” defines the scope of the threats that must be considered when
482 considering whether a platform facilitates subversion of capabilities and data in a platform.

483 The design and implementation of a platform determines the extent to which the platform
484 facilitates subversion of capabilities and data within that platform. It is necessary to define
485 the attacks that must be resisted by TPM-shielded locations and TPM-protected capabilities
486 in that platform.

487 The TCG specifications define all attacks that are resisted by the TPM. These attacks must
488 be considered when determining whether the integrity of TPM-protected capabilities and
489 data in TPM-shielded locations can be damaged. These attacks must be considered when
490 determining whether there is a backdoor method of obtaining access to TPM-protected
491 capabilities and data in TPM-shielded locations. These attacks must be considered when
492 determining whether TPM-protected capabilities have undesirable side effects.

493 **End of informative comment**

- 494 1. For the purposes of the “Protection” section of the specification, the threats that MUST
495 be considered when determining whether the TPM facilitates subversion of TPM-
496 protected-capabilities or data in TPM-shielded-locations SHALL include
- 497 a. The methods inherent in physical attacks that fail if the TPM complies with the
498 “physical protection” requirements specified by TCG
 - 499 b. All methods that require execution of instructions in a computing engine in the
500 platform

501 **3.3 Protection of functions**

502 **Start of informative comment**

503 A TPM-protected-capability must be used to modify TPM-protected capabilities. Other
504 methods must not be allowed to modify TPM-protected capabilities. Otherwise, the integrity
505 of TPM-protected capabilities is unknown.

506 **End of informative comment**

- 507 1. A TPM SHALL NOT facilitate the alteration of TPM-protected-capabilities, except by TPM-
508 protected capabilities.

509 **3.4 Protection of information**

510 **Start of informative comment**

511 TPM-protected capabilities must provide the only means from outside the TPM to access
512 information represented by data in TPM-shielded-locations. Otherwise, a rogue can reveal
513 data in TPM-shielded-locations, or create a derivative of data from TPM-shielded-locations
514 (in a way that maintains some or all of the information content of the data) and reveal the
515 derivative.

516 **End of informative comment**

- 517 1. A TPM SHALL NOT export data that is dependent upon data structures described in part
518 II of the TPM specifications, other than via a TPM-Protected-Capability.

519 **3.5 Side effects**

520 **Start of informative comment**

521 An implementation of a TPM-protected capability must not disclose the contents of TPM-
522 shielded locations. The only exceptions are when such disclosure is inherent in the
523 definition of the capability or in the methods used by the capability. For example, a
524 capability might be designed specifically to reveal hidden data or might use cryptography
525 and hence always be vulnerable to cryptanalysis. In such cases, some disclosure or risk of
526 disclosure is inherent and cannot be avoided. Other forms of disclosure (by side effects, for
527 example) must always be avoided.

528 **End of informative comment**

- 529 1. The implementation of a TPM-protected-capability in a TPM SHALL NOT facilitate the
530 disclosure or the exposure of information represented by data in TPM-shielded-
531 locations, except by means unavoidably inherent in the TPM definition.

532 **3.6 Exceptions and clarifications**

533 **Start of informative comment**

534 These exceptions to the blanket statements in the generic “protection” requirements (above)
535 are fully compatible with the intended effect of those statements. These exceptions affect
536 TCG-data that is available as plain-text outside the TPM and TCG-data that can be used
537 without violating security or privacy. These exceptions are valuable because they approve
538 use of TPM resources by vendor -specific commands in particular circumstances.

539 These clarifications to the blanket statements of the generic “protection” requirements
540 (above) do not materially change the effect of those statements, but serve to approve specific
541 legitimate interpretations of the requirements.

542 **End of informative comment**

- 543 1. A Shielded Location is a place (memory, register, etc.) where data is protected against
544 interference and exposure, independent of its form
- 545 2. A TPM-Protected-Capability is an operation defined in and restricted to those identified
546 in part II and III of the TPM specifications.
- 547 3. A vendor specific command or capability MAY use the standard TCG owner/operator
548 authorization mechanism
- 549 4. A vendor specific command or capability MAY utilize a TPM_PUBKEY structure stored on
550 the TPM so long as the usage of that TPM_PUBKEY structure is authorized using the
551 standard TCG authorization mechanism.
- 552 5. A vendor specific command or capability MAY use a sequence of standard TCG
553 commands. The command MUST propagate the locality used for the call to the used
554 TCG commands or capabilities, or set locality to 0.
- 555 6. A vendor specific command or capability that takes advantage of exceptions and
556 clarifications to the “protection” requirements MUST be defined as part of the security

- 557 target of the TPM. Such a vendor specific command or capability MUST be evaluated to
558 meet the Platform Specific TPM and System Security Targets.
- 559 7. If a TPM employs vendor-specific cipher-text that is protected against subversion to the
560 same or greater extent as internal TPM-resources stored outside the TPM with TCG-
561 defined methods, that vendor-specific cipher-text does not necessarily require protection
562 from physical attack. If a TPM location stores only vendor-specific cipher-text that does
563 not require protection from physical attack, that location can be ignored when
564 determining whether the TPM complies with the "physical protection" requirements
565 specified by TCG.

566 **4. TPM Architecture**

567 **4.1 Interoperability**

568 **Start of informative comment**

569 The TPM must support a minimum set of algorithms and operations to meet TCG
570 specifications.

571 Algorithms

572 RSA, SHA-1, HMAC

573 The algorithms and protocols are the minimum that the TPM must support. Additional
574 algorithms and protocols may be available to the TPM. All algorithms and protocols
575 available in the TPM must be included in the TPM and platform credential.

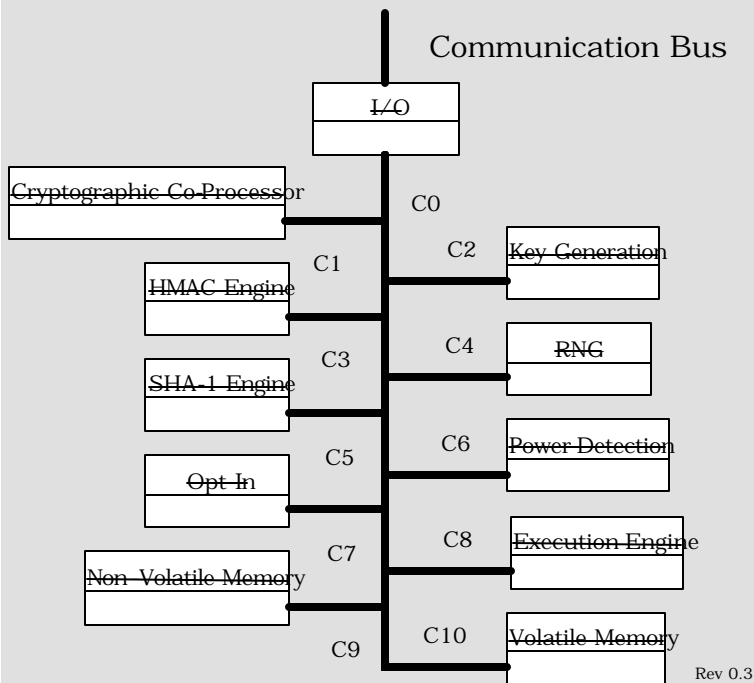
576 The reason to specify these algorithms is two fold. The first is to know and understand the
577 security properties of selected algorithms; identify appropriate key sizes and ensure
578 appropriate use in protocols. The second reason is to define a base level of algorithms for
579 interoperability.

580 **End of informative comment**

581 **4.2 Components**

582 **Start of informative comment**

583 The following is a block diagram Figure 4:a shows the major components of a TPM.



584
585 Figure 4:a - TPM Component Architecture

586 **End of informative comment**

587 4.2.1 Input and Output

588 **Start of informative comment**

589 The I/O component, Figure 4:a C0, manages information flow over the communications
590 bus. It performs protocol encoding/decoding suitable for communication over external and
591 internal buses. It routes messages to appropriate components. The I/O component enforces
592 access policies associated with the Opt-In component as well as other TPM functions
593 requiring access control.

594 The main specification does not require a specific I/O bus. Issues around a particular I/O
595 bus are the purview of a platform specific specification.

596 **End of informative comment**

- 597 1. The number of incoming operand parameter bytes must exactly match the
598 requirements of the command ordinal. If the command contains more or fewer bytes
599 than required, the TPM MUST return TPM_BAD_PARAMETER.

600 4.2.2 Cryptographic Co-Processor

601 **Start of informative comment**

602 The cryptographic co-processor, Figure 4:a C1, implements cryptographic operations within
603 the TPM. The TPM employs conventional cryptographic operations in conventional ways.
604 Those operations include the following:

605 Asymmetric key generation (RSA)

606 Asymmetric encryption/decryption (RSA)

607 Hashing (SHA-1)

608 Random number generation (RNG)

609 The TPM uses these capabilities to perform generation of random data, generation of
610 asymmetric keys, signing and confidentiality of stored data.

611 The TPM may symmetric encryption for internal TPM use but does not expose any
612 symmetric algorithm functions to general users of the TPM.

613 The TPM may implement additional asymmetric algorithms. TPM devices that implement
614 different algorithms may have different algorithms perform the signing and wrapping.

615 **End of informative comment**

- 616 1. The TPM MAY implement other asymmetric algorithms such as DSA or elliptic curve.
617 a. These algorithms may be in use for wrapping, signatures and other operations. There
618 is no guarantee that these keys can migrate to other TPM devices or that other TPM
619 devices will accept signatures from these additional algorithms.
- 620 2. All Storage keys MUST be of strength equivalent to a 2048 bits RSA key or greater. The
621 TPM SHALL NOT load a Storage key whose strength less than that of a 2048 bits RSA
622 key.
- 623 3. All AIK MUST be of strength equivalent to a 2048 bits RSA key, or greater.

624 4.2.2.1 RSA Engine

625 **Start of informative comment**

626 The RSA asymmetric algorithm is used for digital signatures and for encryption.

627 For RSA keys the PKCS #1 standard provides the implementation details for digital
628 signature, encryption and data formats.

629 There is no requirement concerning how the RSA algorithm is to be implemented. TPM
630 manufacturers may use Chinese Remainder Theorem (CRT) implementations or any other
631 method. Designers should review P1363 for guidance on RSA implementations.

632 **End of informative comment**

- 633 1. The TPM MUST support RSA.
- 634 2. The TPM MUST use the RSA algorithm for encryption and digital signatures.
- 635 3. The TPM MUST support key sizes of 512, 768, 1024, and 2048 bits. The TPM MAY
636 support other key sizes.
 - 637 a. The minimum RECOMMENDED key size is 2048 bits.
- 638 4. The RSA public exponent MUST be e , where $e = 2^{16} + 1$.
- 639 5. TPM devices that use CRT as the RSA implementation MUST provide protection and
640 detection of failures during the CRT process to avoid attacks on the private key.

641 4.2.2.2 Signature Operations

642 **Start of informative comment**

643 The TPM performs signatures on both internal items and on requested external blobs. The
644 rules for signatures apply to both operations.

645 **End of informative comment**

- 646 1. The TPM MUST use the RSA algorithm for signature operations where signed data is
647 verified by entities other than the TPM that performed the sign operation.
- 648 2. The TPM MAY use other asymmetric algorithms for signatures; however, there is no
649 requirement that other TPM devices either accept or verify those signatures.
- 650 3. The TPM MUST use P1363 for the format and design of the signature output.

651 4.2.2.3 Symmetric Encryption Engine

652 **Start of informative comment**

653 The TPM uses symmetric encryption to encrypt authentication information, provide
654 confidentiality in transport sessions and provide internal encryption of blobs stored off of
655 the TPM.

656 For authentication and transport sessions, the mandatory mechanism is a Vernam one-
657 time-pad with XOR. The mechanism to generate the one-time-pad is MGF1 and the nonces
658 from the session protocol. When encrypting authorization data, the authorization data and
659 the nonces are the same size, 20 bytes, so a direct XOR is possible.

660 For transport sessions the size of data is larger than the nonces so there needs to be a
661 mechanism to expand the entropy to the size of the data. The mechanism to expand the
662 entropy is the MGF1 function from PKCS#1. This function provides a known mechanism
663 that does not lower the entropy of the nonces.

664 AES may be supported as an alternate symmetric key encryption algorithm.

665 Internal protection of information can use any symmetric algorithm that the TPM designer
666 feels provides the proper level of protection.

667 The TPM does not expose any of the symmetric operations for general message encryption.

668 **End of informative comment**

669 4.2.2.4 Using Keys

670 **Start of Informative comments:**

671 Keys can be symmetric or asymmetric.

672 As the TPM does not have an exposed symmetric algorithm, the TPM is only a generator,
673 storage device and protector of symmetric keys. Generation of the symmetric key would use
674 the TPM RNG. Storage and protection would be provided by the BIND and SEAL capabilities
675 of the TPM. If the caller wants to ensure that the release of a symmetric key is not exposed
676 after UNBIND/UNSEAL on delivery to the caller, the caller should use a transport session
677 with confidentiality set.

678 For asymmetric algorithms, the TPM generates and operates on RSA keys. The keys can be
679 held only by the TPM or in conjunction with the caller of the TPM. If the private portion of a
680 key is in use outside of the TPM it is the responsibility of the caller and user of that key to
681 ensure the protections of the key.

682 The TPM has provisions to indicate if a key is held exclusively for the TPM or can be shared
683 with entities off of the TPM.

684 **End of informative comments.**

- 685 1. A secret key is a key that is a private asymmetric key or a symmetric key.
- 686 2. Data SHOULD NOT be used as a secret key by a TCG protected capability unless that
687 data has been extant only in a shielded location.
- 688 3. A key generated by a TCG protected capability SHALL NOT be used as a secret key
689 unless that key has been extant only in a shielded location.
- 690 4. A secret key obtained by a TCG protected capability from a Protected Storage blob
691 SHALL be extant only in a shielded location.

692 4.2.3 Key Generation

693 **Start of informative comment**

694 The Key Generation component, Figure 4:a C2, creates RSA key pairs and symmetric keys.
695 TCG places no minimum requirements on key generation times for asymmetric or
696 symmetric keys.

697 **End of informative comment**

698 **4.2.3.1 Asymmetric – RSA**

699 The TPM MUST generate asymmetric key pairs. The generate function is a protected
700 capability and the private key is held in a shielded location. The implementation of the
701 generate function MUST be in accordance with P1363.

702 The prime-number testing for the RSA algorithm MUST use the definitions of P1363. If
703 additional asymmetric algorithms are available, they MUST use the definitions from P1363
704 for the underlying basis of the asymmetric key (for example, elliptic curve fitting).

705 **4.2.3.2 Nonce Creation**

706 The creation of all nonce values MUST use the next n bits from the TPM RNG.

707 **4.2.4 HMAC Engine**

708 **Start of informative comment**

709 The HMAC engine, Figure 4:a C3, provides two pieces of information to the TPM: proof of
710 knowledge of the AuthData and proof that the request arriving is authorized and has no
711 modifications made to the command in transit.

712 The HMAC definition is for the HMAC calculation only. It does not specify the order or
713 mechanism that transports the data from caller to actual TPM.

714 The creation of the HMAC is order dependent. Each command has specific items that are
715 portions of the HMAC calculation. The actual calculation starts with the definition from
716 RFC 2104.

717 RFC 2104 requires the selection of two parameters to properly define the HMAC in use.
718 These values are the key length and the block size. This specification will use a key length
719 of 20 bytes and a block size of 64 bytes. These values are known in the RFC as K for the key
720 length and B as the block size.

721 The basic construct is

722 $H(K \text{ XOR opad}, H(K \text{ XOR ipad}, \text{text}))$

723 where

724 H = the SHA1 hash operation

725 K = the key or the AuthData

726 XOR = the xor operation

727 opad = the byte 0x5C repeated B times

728 B = the block length

729 ipad = the byte 0x36 repeated B times

730 text = the message information and any parameters from the command

731 **End of informative comment**

732 The TPM MUST support the calculation of an HMAC according to RFC 2104.

733 The size of the key (K in RFC 2104) MUST be 20 bytes. The block size (B in RFC 2104)
734 MUST be 64 bytes.

735 The order of the parameters is critical to the TPM's ability to recreate the HMAC. Not all of
736 the fields are sent on the wire for each command for instance only one of the nonce values
737 travels on the wire. Each command interface definition indicates what parameters are
738 involved in the HMAC calculation.

739 4.2.5 Random Number Generator

740 **Start of informative comment**

741 The Random Number Generator (RNG) component, Figure 6:a C4 is the source of
742 randomness in the TPM. The TPM uses these random values for nonces, key generation,
743 and randomness in signatures.

744 The RNG consists of a state-machine that accepts and mixes unpredictable data and a post-
745 processor that has a one-way function (e.g. SHA-1). The idea behind the design is that a
746 TPM can be good source of randomness without having to require a genuine source of
747 hardware entropy.

748 The state-machine can have a non-volatile state initialized with unpredictable random data
749 during TPM manufacturing before delivery of the TPM to the customers. The state-machine
750 can accept, at any time, further (unpredictable) data, or entropy, to salt the random
751 number. Such data comes from hardware or software sources – for example; from thermal
752 noise, or by monitoring random keyboard strokes or mouse movements. The RNG requires a
753 reseeding after each reset of the TPM. A true hardware source of entropy is likely to supply
754 entropy at a higher baud rate than a software source.

755 When adding entropy to the state-machine the process must ensure that after the addition,
756 no outside source can gain any visibility into the new state of the state-machine. Neither
757 the Owner of the TPM, nor the manufacturer of the TPM can deduce the state of the state-
758 machine after shipment of the TPM. The RNG post-processor condenses the output of the
759 state-machine into data that has sufficient and uniform entropy. The one-way function
760 should use more bits of input data than it produces as output.

761 Our definition of the RNG allows implementation of a Pseudo Random Number Generator
762 (PRNG) algorithm. However, on devices where a hardware source of entropy is available, a
763 PRNG need not be implemented. This specification refers to both RNG and PRNG
764 implementations as the RNG mechanism. There is no need to distinguish between the two
765 at the TCG specification level.

766 The TPM should be able to provide 32 bytes of randomness on each call. Larger requests
767 may fail with not enough randomness being available.

768 **End of informative comment**

- 769 1. The RNG for the TPM will consist of the following components:
 - 770 a. Entropy source and collector
 - 771 b. State register
 - 772 c. Mixing function
- 773 2. The RNG capability is a TPM-protected capability with no access control.
- 774 3. The RNG output may or may not be shielded data. When the data is for internal use by
775 the TPM (e.g., asymmetric key generation) the data **MUST** be held in a shielded location.
776 When the data is for use by the TSS or another external caller, the data is not shielded.

777 **4.2.5.1 Entropy Source and Collector**778 **Start of informative comment**

779 The entropy source is the process or processes that provide entropy. These types of sources
780 could include noise, clock variations, air movement, and other types of events.

781 The entropy collector is the process that collects the entropy, removes bias, and smoothes
782 the output. The collector differs from the mixing function in that the collector may have
783 special code to handle any bias or skewing of the raw entropy data. For instance, if the
784 entropy source has a bias of creating 60 percent 1s and only 40 percent 0s, then the
785 collector design takes that bias into account before sending the information to the state
786 register.

787 **End of informative comment**

- 788 1. The entropy source **MUST** provide entropy to the state register in a manner that provides
789 entropy that is not visible to an outside process.
- 790 a. For compliance purposes, the entropy source **MAY** be outside of the TPM; however,
791 attention **MUST** be paid to the reporting mechanism.
- 792 2. The entropy source **MUST** provide the information only to the state register.
- 793 a. The entropy source may provide information that has a bias, so the entropy collector
794 must remove the bias before updating the state register. The bias removal could use
795 the mixing function or a function specifically designed to handle the bias of the
796 entropy source.
- 797 b. The entropy source can be a single device (such as hardware noise) or a combination
798 of events (such as disk timings). It is the responsibility of the entropy collector to
799 update the state register whenever the collector has additional entropy.

800 **4.2.5.2 State Register**801 **Start of informative comment**

802 The state register implementation may use two registers: a non-volatile register rngState
803 and a volatile register. The TPM loads the volatile register from the non-volatile register on
804 startup. Each subsequent change to the state register from either the entropy source or the
805 mixing function affects the volatile state register. The TPM saves the current value of the
806 volatile state register to the non-volatile register on TPM power-down. The TPM may update
807 the non-volatile register at any other time. The reasons for using two registers are:

808 To handle an implementation in which the non-volatile register is in a flash device;

809 To avoid overuse of the flash, as the number of writes to a flash device are limited.

810 **End of informative comment**

- 811 1. The state register is in a TPM shielded-location.
- 812 a. The state register **MUST** be non-volatile.
- 813 b. The update function to the state register is a TPM protected-capability.
- 814 c. The primary input to the update function **SHOULD** be the entropy collector.

- 815 2. If the current value of the state register is unknown, calls made to the update function
816 with known data MUST NOT result in the state register ending up in a state that an
817 attacker could know.
- 818 a. This requirement implies that the addition of known data MUST NOT result in a
819 decrease in the entropy of the state register.
- 820 3. The TPM MUST NOT export the state register.

821 4.2.5.3 Mixing Function

822 **Start of informative comment**

823 The mixing function takes the state register and produces output. The mixing function is a
824 TPM protected-capability. The mixing function takes the value from a state register and
825 creates the RNG output. If the entropy source has a bias, then the collector takes that bias
826 into account before sending the information to the state register.

827 **End of informative comment**

- 828 1. Each use of the mixing function MUST affect the state register.
- 829 a. This requirement is to affect the volatile register and does not need to affect the non-
830 volatile state register.

831 4.2.5.4 RNG Reset

832 **Start of informative comment**

833 The resetting of the RNG occurs at least in response to a loss of power to the device.

834 These tests prove only that the RNG is still operating properly; they do not prove how much
835 entropy is in the state register. This is why the self-test checks only after the load of
836 previous state and may occur before the addition of more entropy.

837 **End of informative comment**

- 838 1. The RNG MUST NOT output any bits after a system reset until the following occurs:
- 839 a. The entropy collector performs an update on the state register. This does not include
840 the adding of the previous state but requires at least one bit of entropy.
- 841 b. The mixing function performs a self-test. This self-test MUST occur after the loading
842 of the previous state. It MAY occur before the entropy collector performs the first
843 update.

844 4.2.6 SHA-1 Engine

845 **Start of informative comment**

846 The SHA-1, Figure 4:a C5, hash capability is primarily used by the TPM, as it is a trusted
847 implementation of a hash algorithm. The hash interfaces are exposed outside the TPM to
848 support Measurement taking during platform boot phases and to allow environments that
849 have limited capabilities access to a hash functions. The TPM is not a cryptographic
850 accelerator. TCG does not specify minimum throughput requirements for TPM hash
851 services.

852 **End of informative comment**

- 853 1. The TPM MUST implement the SHA-1 hash algorithm as defined by FIPS-180-1.
- 854 2. The output of SHA-1 is 160 bits and all areas that expect a hash value are REQUIRED
855 to support the full 160 bits.
- 856 3. The only commands that SHALL be presented to the TPM in-between a TPM_SHA1Start
857 command and a TPM_SHA1Complete command SHALL be a variable number (possibly
858 0) of TPM_SHA1Update commands.
- 859 a. The TPM_SHA1Update commands can occur in a transport session.
- 860 4. Throughout all parts of the specification the characters x1 || x2 imply the
861 concatenation of x1 and x2

862 4.2.7 Power Detection

863 Start of informative comment

864 The power detection component, Figure 4:a C6, manages the TPM power states in
865 conjunction with platform power states. TCG requires that the TPM be notified of all power
866 state changes.

867 Power detection also supports physical presence assertions. The TPM may restrict
868 command-execution during periods when the operation of the platform is physically
869 constrained. In a PC, operational constraints occur during the power-on self-test (POST)
870 and require Operator input via the keyboard. The TPM might allow access to certain
871 commands while in a constrained execution mode or boot state. At some critical point in the
872 POST process, the TPM may be notified of state changes that affect TPM command
873 processing modes.

874 End of informative comment

875 4.2.8 Opt-In

876 Start of informative comment

877 The Opt-In component, Figure 4:a C7, provides mechanisms and protections to allow the
878 TPM to be turned on/off, enabled/disabled, activated/deactivated.. The Opt-In component
879 maintains the state of persistent and volatile flags and enforces the semantics associated
880 with these flags.

881 The setting of flags requires either authorization by the TPM Owner or the assertion of
882 physical presence at the platform. The platform's manufacturer determines the techniques
883 used to represent physical-presence. The guiding principle is that no remote entity should
884 be able to change TPM status without either knowledge of the TPM Owner or the Operator is
885 physically present at the platform. Physical presence may be asserted during a period when
886 platform operation is constrained such as power-up.

887 Non-Volatile Flags:

888 PhysicalPresenceLifetimeLock

889 PhysicalPresenceHWEnable

890 PhysicalPresenceCMDEnable

891 Volatile Flags:

892 PhysicalPresenceV

893 The following truth table explains the conditions in which the PhysicalPresenceV flag may
894 be altered:

Persistent / Volatile	P	P	P	V	
Control Flags	PhysicalPresenceLifetimeLock	PhysicalPresenceHWEnable	PhysicalPresenceCMDEnable	PhysicalPresenceV	
Volatile Access Semantics to Physical Presence Flag	-	F	F	-	No access to PhysicalPresenceV flag.
	-	F	T	T	
	-	-	T	F	Access to PhysicalPresenceV flag through TCS_PhysicalPresence command enabled.
	-	T	-	-	Access to PhysicalPresenceV flag through hardware signal enabled.
	-	T	T	F	Access to PhysicalPresenceV flag through hardware signal or TCS_PhysicalPresence command enabled.
Persistent Access Semantics to Physical Presence Flag	T	F	F	-	Access to PhysicalPresenceV flag permanently disabled.
	T	F	T	T	
	T	F	T	F	Exclusive access to PhysicalPresenceV flag through TCS_PhysicalPresence command permanently enabled.
	T	T	F	-	Exclusive access to PhysicalPresenceV flag through hardware signal permanently enabled.
	T	T	T	F	Access to PhysicalPresenceV flag through hardware signal or TCS_PhysicalPresence command permanently enabled.

895 Table 4:a - Physical Presence Semantics

896 TCG also recognizes the concept of unambiguous physical presence. Conceptually, the use
897 of dedicated electrical hardware providing a trusted path to the Operator has higher
898 precedence than the physicalPresenceV flag value. Unambiguous physical presence may be
899 used to override physicalPresenceV flag value under conditions specified by platform
900 specific design considerations.

901 Additional details relating to physical presence can be found in sections on Volatile and
902 Non-volatile memory.

903 **End of informative comment**

904 4.2.9 Execution Engine

905 **Start of informative comment**

906 The execution engine, Figure 4:a C8, runs program code to execute the TPM commands
907 received from the I/O port. The execution engine is a vital component in ensuring that
908 operations are properly segregated and shield locations are protected.

909 **End of informative comment**

910 4.2.10 Non-Volatile Memory

911 **Start of informative comment**

912 Non-volatile memory component, Figure 4:a C9, is used to store persistent identity and
913 state associated with the TPM. The NV area has set items (like the EK) and also is available
914 for allocation and use by entities authorized by the TPM Owner.

915 The TPM designer should consider the use model of the TPM and if the use of NV storage is
916 a concern. NV storage does have a limited life and using the NV storage in a high volume
917 use model may prematurely wear out the TPM.

918 **End of informative comment**

919 4.3 Data Integrity Register (DIR)

920 **Start of informative comment**

921 The DIR were a version 1.1 function. They provided a place to store information using the
922 TPM NV storage.

923 In 1.2 the DIR are deprecated and the use of the DIR should move to the general purpose
924 NV storage area.

925 The TPM must still support the functionality of the DIR register in the NV storage area.

926 **End of informative comment**

- 927 1. A TPM MUST provide one Data Integrity Register (DIR)
 - 928 a. The TPM DIR commands are deprecated in 1.2
 - 929 b. The TPM MUST reserve the space for one DIR in the NV storage area
 - 930 c. The TPM MAY have more than 1 DIR.
- 931 2. The DIR MUST be 160-bit values and MUST be held in TPM shielded-locations.
- 932 3. The DIR MUST be non-volatile (values are maintained during the power-off state).
 - 933 a. A TPM implementation need not provide the same number of DIRs as PCRs.

934 4.4 Platform Configuration Register (PCR)

935 **Start of informative comment**

936 A Platform Configuration Register (PCR) is a 160-bit storage location for discrete integrity
937 measurements. There are a minimum of 16 PCR registers. All PCR registers are shielded-
938 locations and are inside of the TPM. The decision of whether a PCR contains a standard
939 measurement or if the PCR is available for general use is deferred to the platform specific
940 specification.

941 A large number of integrity metrics may be measured in a platform, and a particular
942 integrity metric may change with time and a new value may need to be stored. It is difficult
943 to authenticate the source of measurement of integrity metrics, and as a result a new value
944 of an integrity metric cannot be permitted to simply overwrite an existing value. (A rogue
945 could erase an existing value that indicates subversion and replace it with a benign value.)
946 Thus, if values of integrity metrics are individually stored, and updates of integrity metrics

947 must be individually stored, it is difficult to place an upper bound on the size of memory
948 that is required to store integrity metrics.

949 The PCR is designed to hold an unlimited number of measurements in the register. It does
950 this by using a cryptographic hash and hashing all updates to a PCR. The pseudo code for
951 this is:

952
$$\text{PCR}_i \text{ New} = \text{HASH} (\text{PCR}_i \text{ Old value} \parallel \text{value to add})$$

953 There are two salient properties of cryptographic hash that relate to PCR construction.
954 Ordering – meaning updates to PCRs are not commutative. For example, measuring (A then
955 B) is not the same as measuring (B then A).

956 The other hash property is one-way-ness. This property means it should be computationally
957 infeasible for an attacker to determine the input message given a PCR value. Furthermore,
958 subsequent updates to a PCR cannot be determined without knowledge of the previous PCR
959 values or all previous input messages provided to a PCR register since the last reset.

960 **End of informative comment**

- 961 1. The PCR MUST be a 160-bit field that holds a cumulatively updated hash value
- 962 2. The PCR MUST have a status field associated with it
- 963 3. The PCR MUST be in the RTS and should be in volatile storage
- 964 4. The PCR MUST allow for an unlimited number of measurements to be stored in the PCR
- 965 5. The PCR MUST preserve the ordering of measurements presented to it
- 966 6. A PCR MUST be set to the default value as specified by the PCRReset attribute
- 967 7. A TPM implementation MUST provide 16 or more independent PCRs. These PCRs are
968 identified by index and MUST be numbered from 0 (that is, PCR0 through PCR15 are
969 required for TCG compliance). Vendors MAY implement more registers for general-
970 purpose use. Extra registers MUST be numbered contiguously from 16 up to max - 1,
971 where max is the maximum offered by the TPM.
- 972 8. The TCG-protected capabilities that expose and modify the PCRs use a 32-bit index,
973 indicating the maximum usable PCR index. However, TCG reserves register indices 230
974 and higher for later versions of the specification. A TPM implementation MUST NOT
975 provide registers with indices greater than or equal to 230. In this specification, the
976 following terminology is used (although this internal format is not mandated).
- 977 9. The PSS MUST define at least define one measurement that the RTM MUST make and
978 the PCR where the measurement is stored.
- 979 10. A TCG measurement agent MAY discard a duplicate event instead of incorporating it in a
980 PCR, provided that:
- 981 11. A relevant TCG platform specification explicitly permits duplicates of this type of event to
982 be discarded
- 983 12. The PCR already incorporates at least one event of this type
- 984 13. An event of this type previously incorporated into the PCR included a statement that
985 duplicate such events may be discarded. This option could be used where frequent
986 recording of sleep states will adversely affect the lifetime of a TPM, for example.

987 14. PCRs and the protected capabilities that operate upon them MAY NOT be used until
988 power-on self-test (TPM POST) has completed. If TPM POST fails, the TPM_Extend
989 operation will fail; and, of greater importance, the TPM_Quote operation and TPM_Seal
990 operations that respectively report and examine the PCR contents MUST fail. At the
991 successful completion of TPM POST, all PCRs MUST be set to their default value (either
992 0x00...00 or 0xFF...FF). Additionally, the UINT32 flags MUST be set to zero.

993 5. Endorsement Key Creation

994 **Start of informative comment**

995 The TPM contains a 2048-bit RSA key pair called the endorsement key (EK). The public
996 portion of the key is the PUBEK and the private portion the PRIVEK. Due to the nature of
997 this key pair, both the PUBEK and the PRIVEK have privacy and security concerns.

998 The TPM has the EK generated before the end customer receives the platform. The entity
999 that causes EK generation is also the entity that will create a credential attesting to the
000 validity of the TPM and the EK.

001 The TPM can generate the EK internally using the TPM_CreateEndorsementKey or by using
002 an outside key generator. The EK needs to indicate the genealogy of the EK generation.

003 Subsequent attempts to either generate an EK or insert an EK must fail.

004 If the data structure TPM_ENDORSEMENT_CREDENTIAL is stored on a platform after an
005 Owner has taken ownership of that platform, it SHALL exist only in storage to which access
006 is controlled and is available to authorized entities.

007 **End of informative comment**

- 008 1. The EK MUST be a 2048-bit RSA key
 - 009 a. The public portion of the key is the PUBEK
 - 010 b. The private portion of the key is the PRIVEK
 - 011 c. The PRIVEK SHALL exist only in a TPM-shielded location.
- 012 2. Access to the PRIVEK and PUBEK MUST only be via TPM protected capabilities
 - 013 a. The protected capabilities MUST require TPM Owner authentication or operator
014 physical presence
- 015 3. The generation of the EK may use a process external to the TPM and
016 TPM_CreateEndorsementKeyPair
 - 017 a. The external generation MUST result in an EK that has the same properties as an
018 internally generated EK
 - 019 b. The external generation process MUST protect the EK from exposure during the
020 generation and insertion of the EK
 - 021 c. After insertion of the EK the TPM state MUST be the same as the result of the
022 TPM_CreateEndorsementKeyPair execution
 - 023 d. The process MUST guarantee correct generation, cryptographic strength,
024 uniqueness, privacy, and installation into a genuine TPM, of the EK
 - 025 e. The entity that signs the EK credential MUST be satisfied that the generation process
026 properly generated the EK and inserted it into the TPM
 - 027 f. The process MUST be defined in the target of evaluation (TOE) of the security target
028 in use to evaluate the TPM

029 5.1 Controlling Access to PRIVEK

030 **Start of informative comment**

031 Exposure of the PRIVEK is a security concern.

032 The TPM must ensure that the PRIVEK is not exposed outside of the TPM

033 **End of informative comment**

034 1. The PRIVEK MUST never be out of the control of a TPM shielded location

035 **5.2 Controlling Access to PUBEK**

036 **Start of informative comment**

037 There are no security concerns with exposure or use of the PUBEK.

038 Privacy guidelines suggest that PUBEK could be considered personally identifiable
039 information (PII) if it were associated in some way with personal information (PI) or
040 associated with other PII, but PUBEK alone cannot be considered PII. Arbitrary random
041 numbers do not represent a threat to privacy unless further associated with PI or PII. The
042 PUBEK is an arbitrary random number that may be associated with aggregate platform
043 information, but not personally identifiable information.

044 An EK may become associated with personally identifiable information when an alias
045 platform identifier (AIK) is also associated with PI. The attestation service could include
046 personal information in the AIK credential, thereby making the AIK-PUBEK association PII –
047 but not before.

048 The association of PUBEK with AIK therefore is important to protect via privacy guidelines.
049 The owner/user of the TPM should be able to control whether PUBEK is disclosed along
050 with AIK. The owner/user should be notified of personal information that might be added to
051 an AIK credential, which could result in AIK being considered PII. The owner/user should
052 be able to evaluate the mechanisms used by an attestation entity to protect PUBEK-AIK
053 associations before disclosure occurs. No other entity should be privy to owner/user
054 authorized disclosure besides the intended attestation entity.

055 Several commands may be used to negotiate the conditions of PUBEK-AIK disclosure.
056 TPM_MakeIdentity discloses PUBEK-AIK in the context of requesting an AIK credential.
057 TPM_ActivateIdentity ensures the owner/user has not been spoofed by an interloper. These
058 interfaces allow the owner/user to choose whether disclosure is acceptable and control the
059 circumstances under which disclosure takes place. They do not allow the owner/user the
060 ability to retain control of PUBEK-AIK subsequent to disclosure except by traditional means
061 of trusting the attestation entity to abide by an acceptable privacy policy. The owner/user is
062 able to associate the accepted privacy policy with the disclosure operation (e.g.
063 TPM_MakeIdentity).

064 A persistent flag called readPubek can be set to TRUE to permit reading of PUBEK via
065 TPM_ReadPubek. Reporting the PUBEK value is not considered privacy sensitive because it
066 cannot be associated with any of the AIK keys managed by the TPM without using TPM
067 protected-capabilities.. Keys are encrypted with a nonce when flushed from TPM shielded-
068 locations, Cryptanalysis of flushed keys will not reveal an association of EK to any AIK...

069 The command that manipulates the readPubek flag is TPM_DisablePubekRead.

070 **End of informative comment**

071 **6. Attestation Identity Keys**

072 **Start of informative comment**

073 The Attestation Identity Key (AIK) is an alias to the Endorsement Key (EK). The AIK is a
074 2048-bit RSA key. Generation of an AIK can occur anytime after establishment of the TPM
075 Owner. The TPM can generate a virtually unlimited number of AIK.

076 The TPM Owner controls all aspects of the generation and activation of an AIK. The TPM
077 Owner controls any data associated with the AIK. The AIK credential may contain
078 application specific information.

079 An AIK is a signature key and it signs information generated internally by the TPM. The
080 data would include PCR, other keys and TPM status information. The AIK is a substitute for
081 the EK, which cannot perform signatures for security reasons and cannot perform
082 signatures due to privacy concerns.

083 AIK creation involves three TPM commands.

084 The TPM_MakeIdentity command causes the TPM to generate the AIK key pair. The
085 command also discloses the EK-AIK binding to the service that will issue the AIK credential.

086 The TPM_ActivateIdentity command unwraps a session key that allows for the decryption of
087 the AIK credential. The session key was encrypted using the PUBEK and requires the
088 PRIVEK to perform the decryption.

089 The TPM_RecoverIdentity allows for a subsequent recovery of the session key by again
090 performing the decryption using the PRIVEK.

091 Use of the AIK credential is outside of the control of the TPM.

092 The user of an AIK must prove knowledge of the 160-bit AIK authentication value to use the
093 AIK.

094 **End of informative comment**

095 **7. TPM Ownership**096 **Start of informative comment**

097 Taking ownership of a TPM is the process of inserting a shared secret into a TPM shielded-
098 location. Any entity that knows the shared secret is a TPM Owner. Proof of ownership
099 occurs when an entity, in response to a challenge, proves knowledge of the shared secret.
100 Certain operations in the TPM require authentication from a TPM Owner.

101 Certain operations also allow the human, with physical possession of the platform, to assert
102 TPM Ownership rights. When asserting TPM Ownership, using physical presence, the
103 operations must not expose any secrets protected by the TPM.

104 The platform owner controls insertion of the shared secret into the TPM. The platform
105 owner sets the NV persistent flag ownershipEnabled that allows the execution of the
106 TPM_TakeOwnership command. The TPM_SetOwnerInstall, the command that controls the
107 value ownershipEnabled, requires the assertion of physical presence.

108 Attempting to execute TPM_TakeOwnership fails when a TPM already has an owner. To
109 remove an owner when the current TPM Owner is unable to remove themselves, the human
110 that is in possession of the platform asserts physical presence and executes
111 TPM_ForceClear which removes the shared secret.

112 The insertion protocol that supplies the shared secret has the following requirements:
113 confidentiality, integrity, remoteness and verifiability.

114 To provide confidentiality the proposed TPM Owner encrypts the shared secret using the
115 PUBEK. This requires the PRIVEK to decrypt the value. As the PRIVEK is only available in
116 the TPM the encrypted shared secret is only available to the intended TPM.

117 The integrity of the process occurs by the TPM providing proof of the value of the shared
118 secret inserted into the TPM.

119 By using the confidentiality and integrity, the protocol is useable by TPM Owners that are
120 remote to the platform.

121 The new TPM Owner validates the insertion of the shared secret by using integrity response.

122 **End of informative comment**

123 The TPM MUST ship with no Owner installed. The TPM MUST use the ownership-control
124 protocol (OIAP or OSAP)

125 **7.1 Platform Ownership and Root of Trust for Storage**126 **Start of informative comment**

127 The semantics of platform ownership are tied to the Root-of-trust-for-storage (RTS). The
128 TPM_TakeOwnership command creates a new Storage Root Key (SRK) and new tpmProof
129 value whenever a new owner is established. It follows that objects owned by a previous
130 owner will not be inherited by the new owner. Objects that should be inherited must be
131 transferred by deliberate data migration actions.

132 **End of informative comment**

133 8. Authentication and Authorization Data

134 **Start of informative comment**

135 Using security vernacular the terms below apply to the TPM for this discussion:

136 Authentication: The process of providing proof of claimed ownership of an object or a
137 subject's claimed identity.

138 Authorization: Granting a subject appropriate access to an object.

139 Each TPM object that does not allow "public" access contains a 160-bit shared secret. This
140 shared secret is enveloped within the object itself. The TPM grants use of TPM objects based
141 on the presentation of the matching 160-bits using protocols designed to provide protection
142 of the shared secret. This shared secret is called the AuthData.

143 Neither the TPM, nor its objects (such as keys), contain access controls for its objects (the
144 exception to this is what is provided by the delegation mechanism). If an subject presents
145 the AuthData, that subject is granted full use of the object based on the object's
146 capabilities, not a set of rights or permissions of the subject. This apparent overloading of
147 the concepts of authentication and authorization has caused some confusion. This is
148 caused by having two similarly rooted but distinct perspectives.

149 From the perspective of the TPM looking out, this AuthData is its sole mechanism for
150 authenticating the owner of its objects, thus from its perspective it is authentication data.
151 However, from the application's perspective this data is typically the result of other
152 functions that might perform authentications or authorizations of subjects using higher
153 level mechanisms such as OS login, file system access, etc. Here, AuthData is a result of
154 these functions so in this usage, it authorizes access to the TPM's objects. From this
155 perspective, i.e., the application looking in on the TPM and its objects, the AuthData is
156 authorization data. For this reason, and thanks to a common root within the English
157 language, the term for this data is chosen to be AuthData and is to be interpreted or
158 expanded as either authentication data or authorization data depending on context and
159 perspective.

160 The term AuthData refers to the 160-bit value used to either prove ownership of, or
161 authorization to use, an object. This is also called the object's shared secret. The term
162 authorization will be used when referring the combined action of verifying the AuthData and
163 allowing access to the object or function. The term authorization session applies to a state
164 where the AuthData has been authentication and a session handle established that is
165 associated with that authentication.

166 A wide-range of objects use AuthData. It is used to establish platform ownership, key use
167 restrictions, object migration and to apply access control to opaque objects protected by the
168 TPM.

169 AuthData is a 160-bit shared-secret plus high-entropy random number. The assumption is
170 the shared-secret and random number are mixed using SHA-1 digesting, but no specific
171 function for generating AuthData is specified by TCG.

172 TCG command processing sessions (e.g. OSAP, ADIP) may use AuthData as an initialization
173 vector when creating a one-time pad. Session encryption is used to encrypt portions of
174 command messages exchanged between TPM and a caller.

175 The TPM stores AuthData with TPM controlled-objects and in shielded-locations. AuthData
176 is never in the clear, when managed by the TPM except in shielded-locations. Only TPM
177 protected-capabilities may access AuthData (contained in the TPM). AuthData objects may
178 not be used for any other purpose besides authentication and authorization of TPM
179 operations on controlled-objects.

180 Outside the TPM, a reference monitor of some kind is responsible for protecting AuthData.
181 AuthData should be regarded as a controlled data item (CDI) in the context of the security
182 model governing the reference monitor. TCG expects this entity to preserve the interests of
183 the platform Owner.

184 There is no requirement that instances of AuthData be unique.

185 **End of informative comment**

186 The TPM MUST reserve 160 bits for the AuthData. The TPM treats the AuthData as a blob.
187 The TPM MUST keep AuthData in a shielded-location.

188 The TPM MUST enforce that the only usage in the TPM of the AuthData is to perform
189 authorizations.

190 **8.1 Dictionary Attack Considerations**

191 **Start of informative comment**

192 The decision to provide protections against dictionary attacks is due to the inability of the
193 TPM to guarantee that an authorization value has high entropy. While the creation and
194 authorization protocols could change to support the assurance of high entropy values, the
195 changes would be drastic and would totally invalidate any 1.x TPM version.

196 Version 1.1 explicitly avoided any requirements for dictionary attack mitigation.

197 Version 1.2 adds the requirement that the TPM vendor provide some assistance against
198 dictionary attacks. The internal mechanism is vendor specific. The TPM designer should
199 review the requirements for dictionary attack mitigation in the Common Criteria.

200 The 1.2 specification does not provide any functions to turn on the dictionary attack
201 prevention. The specification does provide a way to reset from the TPM response to an
202 attack.

203 By way of example, the following is a way to implement the dictionary attack mitigation.

204 The TPM keeps a count of failed authorization attempts. The vendor allows the TPM Owner
205 to set a threshold of failed authorizations. When the count exceeds the threshold, the TPM
206 locks up and does not respond to any requests for a time out period. The time out period
207 doubles each time the count exceeds the threshold. If the TPM resets during a time out
208 period, the time out period starts over after TPM_Init, or TPM_Startup. To reset the count
209 and the time out period the TPM Owner executes TPM_ResetLockValue. If the authorization
210 for TPM_ResetLockValue fails, the TPM must lock up for the entire time out period and no
211 additional attempts at unlocking will be successful. Executing TPM_ResetLockValue when
212 outside of a time out period still results in the resetting of the count and time out period.

213 **End of informative comment**

214 The TPM SHALL incorporate mechanism(s) that will provide some protection against
215 exhaustive or dictionary attacks on the authorization values stored within the TPM.

216 This version of the TPM specification does NOT specify the particular strategy to be used.
217 Some examples might include locking out the TPM after a certain number of failures,
218 forcing a reboot under some combination of failures, or requiring specific actions on the
219 part of some actors after an attack has been detected. The mechanisms to manage these
220 strategies are vendor specific at this time.

221 If the TPM in response to the attacks locks up for some time period or requires a special
222 operation to restart, the TPM MUST prevent any authorized TPM command and MAY
223 prevent any TPM from executing until the mitigation mechanism completes. The TPM
224 Owner can reset the mechanism using the TPM_ResetLockValue command.
225 TPM_ResetLockValue MUST be allowed to run exactly once while the TPM is locked up.

226 **9. TPM Operation**227 **Start of informative comment**

228 Through the course of TPM operation, it may enter several operational modes that include
 229 power-up, self-test, administrative modes and full operation. This section describes TPM
 230 operational states and state transition criteria. Where applicable, the TPM commands used
 231 to facilitate state transition or function are included in diagrams and descriptions.

232 The TPM keeps the information relative to the TPM operational state in a combination of
 233 persistent and volatile flags. For ease of reading the persistent flags are prefixed by pFlags
 234 and the volatile flags prefixed by vFlags.

235 The following state diagram describes TPM operational states at a high level. Subsequent
 236 state diagrams drill-down to finer detail that describes fundamental operations, protections
 237 on operations and the transitions between them.

238 The state diagrams use the following notation:



239 - Signifies a state.



240 - Transitions between states are represented as a single headed arrows.



241 - Circular transitions indicate operations that don't result in a transition to another
 242 state.



243 - Decision boxes split state flow based on a logical test. Decision conditions are called
 244 Guards and are identified by bracketed text..

245 < [text] > Bracketed text indicates transitions that are gated. Text within the brackets
 246 describes the pre-condition that must be met before state transition may occur.

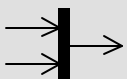
247 < /name > Transitions may list the events that trigger state transition. The forward slash
 248 demarcates event names.



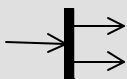
249 - The starting point for reading state diagrams.



250 - The ending point for state diagrams. Perpetual state systems may not have an ending
 251 indicator.



252 - The collection bar consolidates multiple identical transition events into a single
 253 transition arrow.



254 - The distribution bar splits transitions to flow into multiple states.

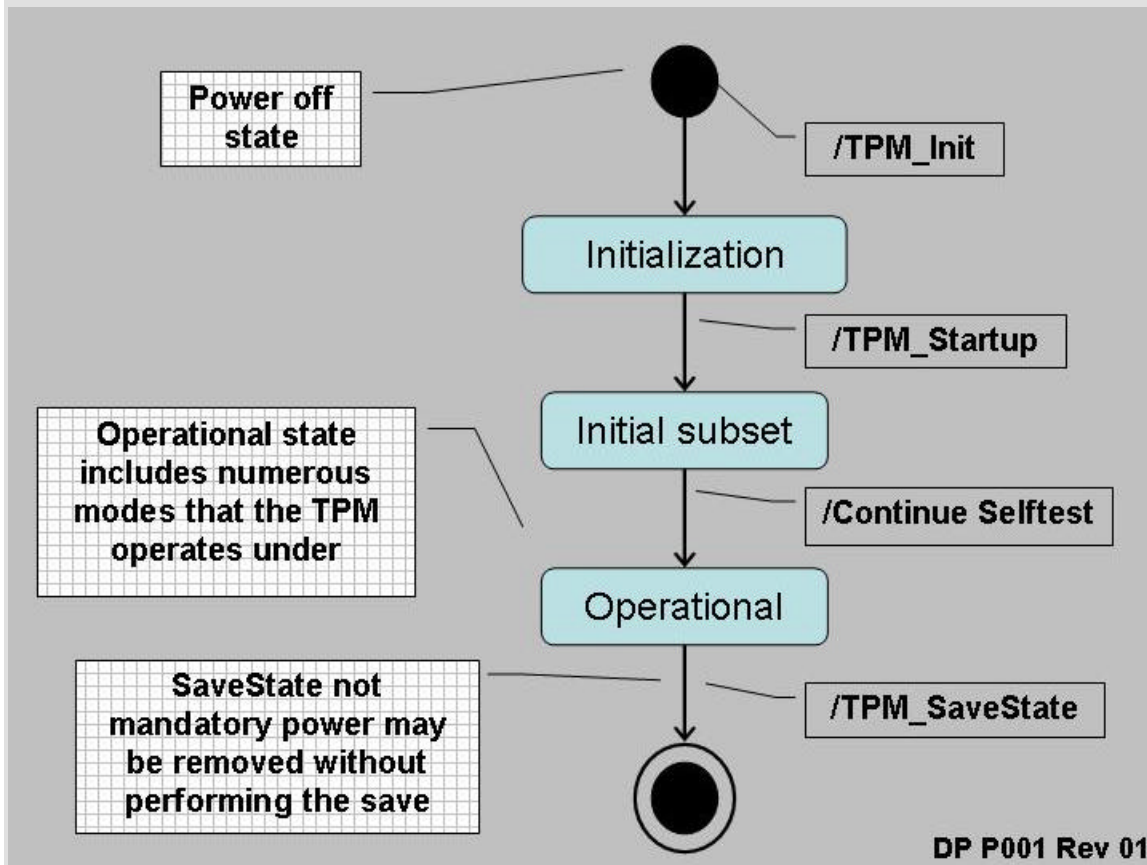


255 - The history indicator means state values are remembered across context switches or
 256 power-cycles.

257 **End of informative comment**

258 9.1 TPM Initialization & Operation State Flow

259 **Start of informative comment**



260
261 **Figure 9:a - TPM Operational States**

262 **End of informative comment**

263 9.1.1 Initialization

264 **Start of informative comment**

265 TPM_Init transitions the TPM from a power-off state to one where the TPM begins an
266 initialization process. TPM_Init could be the result of power being applied to the platform or
267 a hard reset.

268 TPM_Init sets an internal flag to indicate that the TPM is undergoing initialization. The TPM
269 must complete initialization before it is operational. The completion of initialization requires
270 the receipt of the TPM_Startup command.

271 The TPM is not fully operational until all of the self-tests are complete. Successful
272 completion of the self-tests allows the TPM to enter fully operational mode.

273 Fully operational does not imply that all functions of the TPM are available. The TPM needs
274 to have a TPM Owner and be enabled for all functions to be available.

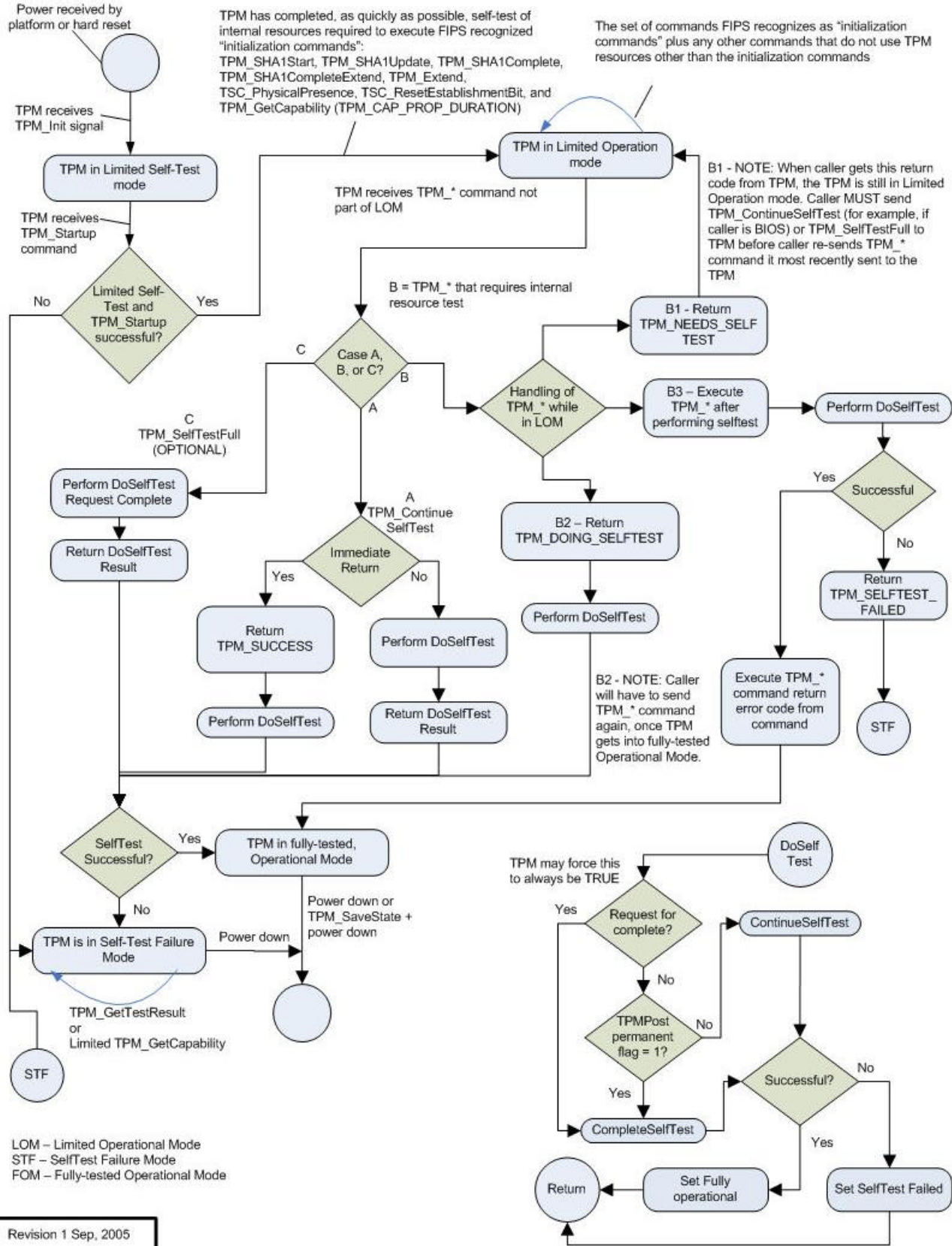
275 The TPM transitions out of the operational mode by having power removed from the system.
276 Prior to the exiting operational mode, the TPM prepares for the transition by executing the
277 TPM_SaveState command. There is no requirement that TPM_SaveState execute before the
278 transition to power-off mode occurs.

279 **End of informative comment**

280 1. After TPM_Init and until receipt of TPM_Startup the TPM MUST return
281 TPM_INVALID_POSTINIT for all commands. Prior to receipt of TPM_Startup the TPM
282 MAY enter shutdown or failure mode.

283 **9.2 Self-Test Modes**

284 **Start of informative comment**



285

286

Figure 9:b - Self-Test States

287 After initialization the TPM performs a limited self-test. This test provides the assurance
288 that a selected subset of TPM commands will perform properly. The limited nature of the
289 self-test allows the TPM to be functional in as short of time as possible. The commands
290 enabled by this self-test are:

291 TPM_SHA1xxx - Enabling the SHA-1 commands allows the TPM to assist the platform
292 startup code. The startup code may execute in an extremely constrained memory
293 environment and having the TPM resources available to perform hash functions can allow
294 the measurement of code at an early time. While the hash is available, there are no speed
295 requirements on the I/O bus to the TPM or on the TPM itself so use of this functionality
296 may not meet platform startup requirements.

297 TPM_Extend - Enabling the extend, and by reference the PCR, allows the startup code to
298 perform measurements. Extending could use the SHA-1 TPM commands or perform the
299 hash using the main processor.

300 TPM_Startup - This command must be available as it is the transition command from the
301 initial environment to the limited operational state.

302 TPM_ContinueSelfTest - This command causes the TPM to complete the self-tests on all
303 other TPM functions. If TPM receives a command, and the self-test for that command has
304 not been completed, the TPM may implicitly perform the actions of the
305 TPM_ContinueSelfTest command.

306 TPM_SelfTestFull - A TPM MAY allow this command after initialization, but typically
307 TPM_ContinueSelfTest would be used to avoid repeating the limited self tests.

308 TPM_GetCapability - A subset of capabilities can be read in the limited operation state.

309 The complete self-test ensures that all TPM functionality is available and functioning
310 properly.

311 **End of informative comment**

312 1. At startup, a TPM MUST self-test all internal functions that are necessary to do
313 TPM_SHA1Start, TPM_SHA1Update, TPM_SHA1Complete, TPM_SHA1CompleteExtend,
314 TPM_Extend, TPM_Startup, TPM_ContinueSelfTest, and a subset of TPM_GetCapability..

315 2. The TSC_PhysicalPresence and TSC_ResetEstablishmentBit commands do not operate
316 on shielded-locations and have no requirement to be self-tested before any use. TPM's
317 SHOULD test these functions before operation.

318 3. The TPM MAY allow TPM_SelfTestFull to be used before completion of the actions of
319 TPM_ContinueSelfTest.

320 4. The TPM MAY implicitly run the actions of TPM_ContinueSelfTest upon receipt of a
321 command that requires untested resources.

322 5. The platform specific specification MUST define the maximum startup self-test time.

323 **9.2.1 Operational Self-Test**

324 **Start of informative comment**

325 The completion of self-test is initiated by TPM_ContinueSelfTest. The TPM MAY allow
326 TPM_SelfTestFull to be issued instead of TPM_ContinueSelfTest.

327 TPM_ContinueSelfTest is the command issued during platform initialization after the
328 platform has made use of the early commands (perhaps for an early measurement), the
329 platform is now performing other initializations, and the TPM can be left alone to complete
330 the self-tests. Before any command other than the limited subset is executed, all self-tests
331 must be complete.

332 TPM_SelfTestFull is a request to have the TPM perform another complete self-test. This test
333 will take some time but provides an accurate assessment of the TPM's ability to perform all
334 operations.

335 The original design of TPM_ContinueSelfTest was for the TPM to test those functions that
336 the original startup did not test. The FIPS-140 evaluation of the specification requested a
337 change such that TPM_ContinueSelfTest would perform a complete self-test. The rationale
338 is that the original tests are only part of the initialization of the TPM; if they fail, the TPM
339 does not complete initialization. Performing a complete test after initialization meets the
340 FIPS-140 requirements. The TPM may work differently in FIPS mode or the TPM may simply
341 write the TPM_ContinueSelfTest command such that it always performs the complete check.

342 TPM_ContinueSelfTest causes a test of the TPM internal functions. When
343 TPM_ContinueSelfTest is asynchronous, the TPM immediately returns a successful result
344 code before starting the tests. When testing is complete, the TPM does not return any
345 result. When TPM_ContinueSelfTest is synchronous, the TPM completes the self-tests and
346 then returns a success or failure result code.

347 The TPM may reject any command other than the limited subset if self test has not been
348 completed. Alternatively, the actions of TPM_ContinueSelfTest may start automatically if the
349 TPM receives a command and there has been no testing of the underlying functionality. If
350 the TPM implements this implicit self-test, it may immediately return a result code
351 indicating that it is doing self-test. Alternatively, it may do the self-test, then do the
352 command, and return only the result code of the command.

353 Programmers of TPM drivers should take into account the time estimates for self-test and
354 minimize the polling for self-test completion. While self-test is executing, the TPM may
355 return an out-of-band "busy" signal to prevent command from being issued. Alternatively,
356 the TPM may accept the command but delay execution until after the self-test completes.
357 Either of those alternatives may appear as if the TPM is blocking to upper software layers.
358 Alternatively, the TPM may return an indication that is doing a self-test.

359 Upon the completion of the self-tests, the result of the self-tests are held in the TPM such
360 that a subsequent call to TPM_GetTestResult returns the self-test result.

361 In version 1.1, there was a separate command to create a signed self-test,
362 TPM_CertifySelfTest. Version 1.2 deprecates the command. The new use model is to perform
363 TPM_GetTestResult inside of a transport session and then use
364 TPM_ReleaseTransportSigned to obtain the signature.

365 If self-tests fail, the TPM goes into failure state and does not allow most other operations to
366 continue. The TPM_GetTestResult will operate in failure mode so an outside observer can
367 obtain information as to the reason for the self-test failure.

368 A TPM may take three courses of action when presented with a command that requires an
369 untested resource.

370 1. The TPM may return TPM_NEEDS_SELFTEST, indicating that the execution of the
371 command requires TPM_ContinueSelfTest.

372 2. The TPM may implicitly execute the self-test and return a TPM_DOING_SELFTEST
373 return code, causing the external software to retry the command.

374 3. The TPM may implicitly execute the self-test, execute the ordinal, and return the results
375 of the ordinal.

376 The following example shows how software can detect either mechanism with a single piece
377 of code

378 1. SW sends TPM_xxx command

379 2. SW checks return code from TPM

380 3. If return code is TPM_DOING_SELFTEST, SW attempts to resend

381 a. If the TIS times out waiting for TPM ready, pause for self-test time then resend

382 b. if TIS timeout, then error

383 4. else if return code is TPM_NEEDS_SELFTEST

384 a. Send TPM_ContinueSelfTest

385 5. else

386 a. Process the ordinal return code

387 **End of informative comment**

388 1. The TPM MUST provide startup self-tests. The TPM MUST provide mechanisms to allow
389 the self-tests to be run on demand. The response from the self-tests is pass or fail.

390 2. The TPM MUST complete the startup self-tests in a manner and timeliness that allows
391 the TPM to be of use to the BIOS during the collection of integrity metrics.

392 3. The TPM MUST complete the required checks before a given feature is in use. If a
393 function self-test is not complete the TPM MUST return TPM_NEEDS_SELFTEST or
394 TPM_DOING_SELFTEST, or do the self-test before using the feature.

395 4. There are two sections of startup self-tests: required and recommended. The
396 recommended tests are not a requirement due to timing constraints. The TPM
397 manufacturer should perform as many tests as possible in the time constraints.

398 5. The TPM MUST report the tests that it performs.

399 6. The TPM MUST provide a mechanism to allow self-test to execute on request by any
400 challenger.

401 7. The TPM MUST provide for testing of some operations during each execution of the
402 operation.

403 8. The TPM MUST check the following:

404 a. RNG functionality

405 b. Reading and extending the integrity registers. The self-test for the integrity registers
406 will leave the integrity registers in a known state.

407 c. Testing the EK integrity, if it exists

408 i. This requirement specifies that the TPM will verify that the endorsement key pair
409 can sign and verify a known value. This test also tests the RSA sign and verify

- 410 engine. If the EK has not yet been generated the TPM action is manufacturer
411 specific.
- 412 d. The integrity of the protected capabilities of the TPM
- 413 i. This means that the TPM must ensure that its “microcode” has not changed, and
414 not that a test must be run on each function.
- 415 e. Any tamper-resistance markers
- 416 i. The tests on the tamper-resistance or tamper-evident markers are under
417 programmable control. There is no requirement to check tamper-evident tape or
418 the status of epoxy surrounding the case.
- 419 9. The TPM SHOULD check the following:
- 420 a. The hash functionality
- 421 i. This check will hash a known value and compare it to an expected result. There is
422 no requirement to accept external data to perform the check.
- 423 ii. The TPM MAY support a test using external data.
- 424 b. Any symmetric algorithms
- 425 i. This check will use known data with a random key to encrypt and decrypt the
426 data
- 427 c. Any additional asymmetric algorithms
- 428 i. This check will use known data to encrypt and decrypt.
- 429 d. The key-wrapping mechanism
- 430 i. The TPM should wrap and unwrap a key. The TPM MUST NOT use the
431 endorsement key pair for this test.
- 432 e. Any other internal mechanisms
- 433 10. Self-Test Failure
- 434 a. When the TPM detects a failure during any self-test, the part experiencing the failure
435 MUST enter a shutdown mode. This shutdown mode will allow only the following
436 operations to occur:
- 437 i. Update. The update function MAY replace invalid microcode, providing that the
438 parts of the TPM that provide update functionality have passed self-test.
- 439 ii. TPM_GetTestResult. This command can assist the TPM manufacturer in
440 determining the cause of the self-test failure.
- 441 iii. TPM_GetCapability may return only the manufacturer and version.
- 442 iv. All other operations will return the error code TPM_FAILEDSELFTEST.
- 443 b. Upon entering failure mode, the TPM clears all information except those items
444 specified in TPM_OwnerClear.
- 445 c. If the TPM detects an attack, by whatever mechanism the TPM uses, the TPM MUST
446 invalidate all session keys and any internal keys, like AES, in use to store off-chip
447 blobs.

- 448 11. Prior to the completion of the actions of TPM_ContinueSelfTest the TPM MAY respond in
449 two ways
- 450 a. The TPM MAY automatically invoke the actions of TPM_ContinueSelfTest.
 - 451 i. The TPM MAY return TPM_DOING_SELFTEST.
 - 452 ii. The TPM may complete the self-test, execute the command, and return the
453 command result.
 - 454 b. The TPM MAY return the error code TPM_NEEDS_SELFTEST

455 **9.3 Startup**

456 **Start of informative comment**

457 Startup transitions the TPM from the initialization state to an operational state. The
458 transition includes information from the platform to inform the TPM of the platform
459 operating state. TPM_Startup has three options: Clear, State and Deactivated.

460 The Clear option informs the TPM that the platform is starting in a “cleared” state or most
461 likely a complete reboot. The TPM is to set itself to the default values and operational state
462 specified by the TPM Owner.

463 The State option informs the TPM that the platform is requesting the TPM to recover a saved
464 state and continue operation from the saved state. The platform previously made the
465 TPM_SaveState request to the TPM such that the TPM prepares values to be recovered later.

466 The Deactivated state informs the TPM that it should not allow further operations and
467 should fail all subsequent command requests. The Deactivated state can only be reset by
468 performing another TPM_Init.

469 **End of informative comment**

470 **9.4 Operational Mode**

471 **Start of informative comment**

472 After the TPM completes both TPM_Startup and self-tests, the TPM is ready for operation.

473 There are three discrete states, enabled or disabled, active or inactive and owned or
474 unowned. These three states when combined form eight operational modes.



475

476 Figure 9:c - Eight Modes of Operation

477 S1 is the fully operational state where all TPM functions are available. S8 represents a mode
478 where all TPM features (except those to change the state) are off.

479 Given the eight modes of operation, the TPM can be flexible in accommodating a wide range
480 of usage scenarios. The default delivery state for a TPM should be S8 (disabled, inactive and
481 unowned). In S8, the only mechanism available to move the TPM to S1 is having physical
482 access to the platform.

483 Two examples illustrate the possibilities of shipping combinations.

484 Example 1

485 The customer does not want the TPM to attest to any information relative to the platform.
486 The customer does not want any remote entity to attempt to change the control options that
487 the platform owner is setting. For this customer the platform manufacturer sets the TPM in
488 S8 (disabled, deactivated and unowned).

489 To change the state of the platform the platform owner would assert physical presence and
490 enable, activate and insert the TPM Owner shared secret. The details of how to change the
491 various modes is in subsequent sections.

492 This particular sequence gives maximum control to the customer.

493 Example 2

494 A corporate customer wishes to have platforms shipped to their employees and the IT
495 department wishes to take control of the TPM remotely. To satisfy these needs the TPM
496 should be in S5 (enabled, active and unowned). When the platform connects to the
497 corporate LAN the IT department would execute the TPM_TakeOwnership command
498 remotely.

499 This sequence allows the IT department to accept platforms into their network without
500 having to have physical access to each new machine.

501 **End of informative comment**

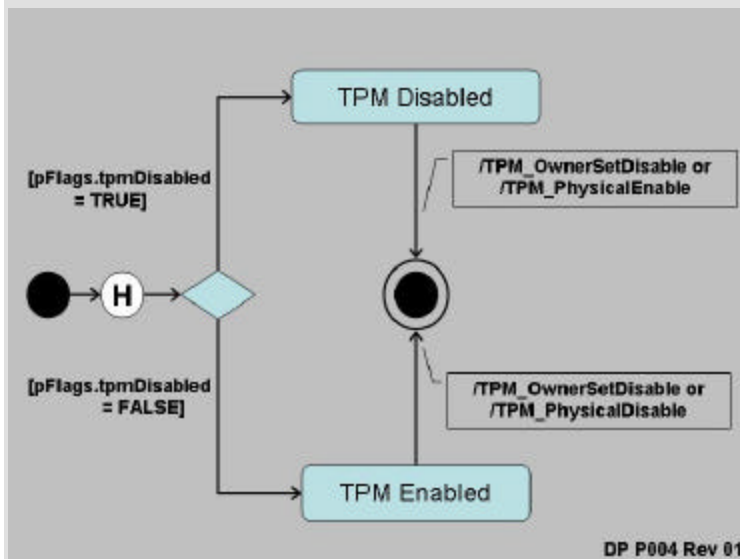
502 The TPM MUST have commands to perform the following:

- 503 1. Enable and disable the TPM. These commands MUST work as TPM Owner authorized or
- 504 with the assertion of physical presence
- 505 2. Activate and deactivate the TPM. These commands MUST work as TPM Owner
- 506 authorized or with the assertion of physical presence
- 507 3. Activate and deactivate the ability to take ownership of the TPM
- 508 4. Assert ownership of the TPM.

9.4.1 Enabling a TPM

Informative comment

511 A disabled TPM is not able to execute commands that use the resources of a TPM. While
512 some commands are available (SHA-1 for example) the TPM is not able to load keys and
513 perform TPM_Seal and other such operations. These restrictions are the same as for an
514 inactive TPM. The difference between inactive and disabled is that a disabled TPM is unable
515 to execute the TPM_TakeOwnership command. A disabled TPM that has a TPM Owner is not
516 able to execute normal TPM commands.



517
518 pFlags.tpmDisabled contains the current enablement status. When set to TRUE the TPM is
519 disabled, when FALSE the TPM is enabled.

520 Changing the setting pFlags.tpmDisabled has no effect on any secrets or other values held
521 by the TPM. No keys, monotonic counters or other resources are invalidated by changing
522 TPM enablement. There is no guarantee that session resources (like transport sessions)
523 survive the change in enablement, but there is no loss of secrets.

524 The TPM_OwnerSetDisable command can be used to transition in either Enabled or
525 Disabled states. The desired state is a parameter to TPM_OwnerSetDisable. This command
526 requires TPM Owner authentication to operate. It is suitable for post-boot and remote
527 invocation.

528 An unowned TPM requires the execution of TPM_PhysicalEnable to enable the TPM and
529 TPM_PhysicalDisable to disable the TPM. Operators of an owned TPM can also execute

530 these two commands. The use of the physical commands allows a platform operator to
531 disable the TPM without TPM Owner authorization.

532 TPM_PhysicalEnable transitions the TPM from Disabled to Enabled state. This command is
533 guarded by a requirement of operator physical presence. Additionally, this command can be
534 invoked by a physical event at the platform, whether or not the TPM has an Owner or there
535 is a human physically present. This command is suitable for pre-boot invocation.

536 TPM_PhysicalDisable transitions the TPM from Enabled to Disabled state. It has the same
537 guard and invocation properties as TPM_PhysicalEnable.

538 The subset of commands the TPM is able to execute is defined in the structures document
539 in the persistent flag section.

540 Misuse of the disabled state can result in denial-of-service. Proper management of Owner
541 AuthData and physical access to the platform is a critical element in ensuring availability of
542 the system.

543 **End of informative comment**

544 1. The TPM MUST provide an enable and disable command that is executed with TPM
545 Owner authorization.

546 2. The TPM MUST provide an enable and disable command this is executed locally using
547 physical presence.

548 **9.4.2 Activating a TPM**

549 **Informative comment**

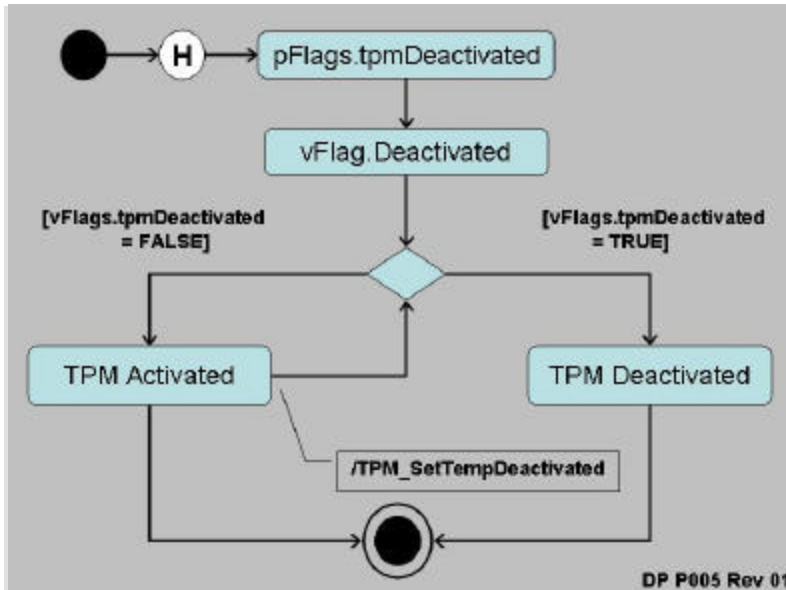
550 A deactivated TPM is not able to execute commands that use TPM resources. A major
551 difference between deactivated and disabled is that a deactivated TPM CAN execute the
552 TPM_TakeOwnership command.

553 Activation control is with both persistent and volatile flags. The persistent flag is never
554 directly checked by the TPM, rather it is the source of the original setting for the volatile
555 flag. During TPM initialization the value of pFlags.tpmDeactivated is copied to
556 vFlags.tpmDeactivated. When the TPM execution engine checks for TPM activation, it only
557 references vFlags.tpmDeactivated.

558 Toggling the state of pFlags.tpmDeactivated uses TPM_PhysicalSetDeactivated. This
559 command requires physical presence. There is no associated TPM Owner authenticated
560 command as the TPM Owner can always execute TPM_OwnerSetDisabled which results in
561 the same TPM operations. The toggling of this flag does not affect the current operation of
562 the TPM but requires a reboot of the platform such that the persistent flag is again copied
563 to the volatile flag.

564 The volatile flag, vFlags.tpmDeactivated, is set during initialization by the value of
565 pFlags.tpmDeactivated. If vFlags.tpmDeactivated is TRUE the only way to reactivate the
566 TPM is to reboot the platform and have pFlags reset the vFlags value.

567 If vFlags is FALSE and the TPM running TPM_SetTempDeactivated will set
568 vFlags.tpmDeactivated to TRUE and then require a reboot of the platform to reactivate the
569 platform.



570

571 Figure 9:d - Activated and Deactivated States

572 TPM activation is for Operator convenience. It allows the operator to deactivate the platform
 573 during a user session when the operator does not want to disclose platform or attestation
 574 identity.

575 The subset of commands that are available when the TPM is deactivated is contained in the
 576 structures document. The TPM_TakeOwnership command is available when deactivated.

577 **End of informative comment**

- 578 1. The TPM MUST maintain a non-volatile flag that indicates the activation state
- 579 2. The TPM MUST provide for the setting of the non-volatile flag using a command that
 580 requires physical presence
- 581 3. The TPM MUST sets a volatile flag using the current setting of the non-volatile flag.
- 582 4. The TPM MUST provide for a command that deactivates the TPM immediately
- 583 5. The only mechanism to reactivate a TPM once deactivated is to power-cycle the system.

584 **9.4.3 Taking TPM Ownership**

585 **Start of informative comment**

586 The owner of the TPM has ultimate control of the TPM. The owner of the TPM can enable or
 587 disable the TPM, create AIK and set policies for the TPM. The process of taking ownership
 588 must be a tightly controlled process with numerous checks and balances.

589 The protections around the taking of ownership include the enablement status, specific
 590 persistent flags and the assertion of physical presence.

591 Control of the TPM revolves around knowledge of the TPM Owner authentication value.
 592 Proving knowledge of authentication value proves the calling entity is the TPM Owner. It is
 593 possible for more than one entity to know the TPM Owner authentication value.

594 The TPM provides no mechanisms to recover a lost TPM Owner authentication value.

595 Recovery from a lost or forgotten TPM Owner authentication value involves removing the old
596 value and installing a new one. The removal of the old value invalidates all information
597 associated with the previous value. Insertion of a new value can occur after the removal of
598 the old value.

599 A disabled and inactive TPM that has no TPM Owner cannot install an owner.

600 To invalidate the TPM Owner authentication value use either TPM_OwnerClear or
601 TPM_ForceClear.

602 **End of informative comment**

603 1. The TPM Owner authentication value MUST be a 160-bits

604 2. The TPM Owner authentication value MUST be held in persistent storage

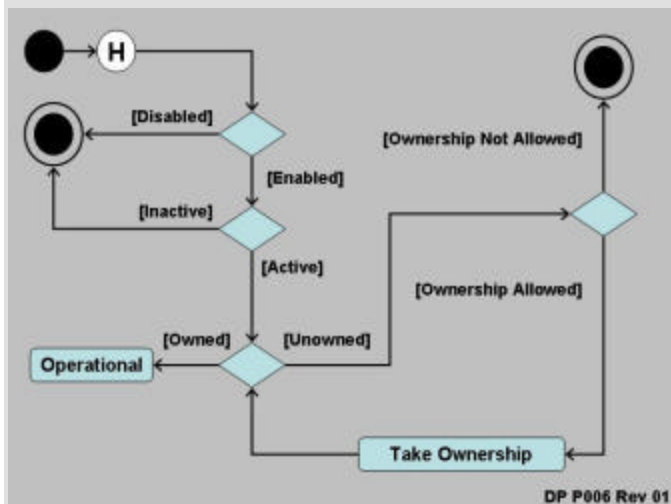
605 3. The TPM MUST have no mechanisms to recover a lost TPM Owner authentication value

606 **9.4.3.1 Enabling Ownership**

607 **Informative comment**

608 The state that a TPM must be in to allow for TPM_TakeOwnership to succeed is; enabled
609 and fFlags.OwnershipEnabled TRUE.

610 The following diagram shows the states and the operational checks the TPM makes before
611 allowing the insertion of the TPM Ownership value.



612

613

614 The TPM checks the disabled flag and then the inactive flag. If the flags indicate enabled
615 then the TPM checks for the existence of a TPM Owner. If an Owner is not present the TPM
616 then checks the OwnershipDisabled flag. If TRUE the TPM_TakeOwnership command will
617 execute.

618 While the TPM has no Owner but is enabled and active there is a limited subset of
619 commands that will successfully execute.

620 The TPM_SetOwnerInstall command toggles the state of the pFlags.OwnershipDisabled.
621 TPM_SetOwnerInstall requires the assertion of physical presence to execute.

622 **End of informative comment**

623 **9.4.4 Transitioning Between Operational States**

624 **Start of informative comment**

625 The following table is a recap of the commands necessary to transition a TPM from one state
626 to another.

State	TPM Owner Auth	Physical Presence	Persistence
Disabled to Enabled	TPM_OwnerSetDisable	TPM_PhysicalEnable	permanent
Enabled to Disabled	TPM_OwnerSetDisable	TPM_PhysicalDisable	permanent
Inactive to Active		TPM_PhysicalSetDeactivated	permanent
Active to Inactive		TPM_PhysicalSetDeactivated	permanent
Active to Inactive		TPM_SetTempDeactivated	boot cycle

627
628 **End of informative comment**

629 **9.5 Clearing the TPM**

630 **Start of informative comment**

631 Clearing the TPM is the process of returning the TPM to factory defaults. It is possible the
632 platform owner will change when in this state.

633 The commands to clear a TPM require either TPM Owner authentication or the assertion of
634 physical presence.

635 The clear process performs the following tasks:

636 Invalidate the SRK. Once invalidated all information stored using the SRK is now
637 unavailable. The invalidation does not change the blobs using the SRK rather there is no
638 way to decrypt the blobs after invalidation of the SRK.

639 Invalidate tpmProof. tpmProof is a value that provides the uniqueness to values stored off of
640 the TPM. By invalidating tpmProof all off TPM blobs will no longer load on the TPM.

641 Invalidate the TPM Owner authentication value. With the authentication value invalidated
642 there are no TPM Owner authenticated commands that will execute.

643 Reset volatile and non-volatile data to manufacturer defaults.

644 The clear must not affect the EK.

645 Once cleared the TPM will return TPM_NOSRK to commands that require authentication.

646 The PCR values are undefined after a clear operation. The TPM must go through TPM_Init to
647 properly set the PCR values.

648 Clear authentication comes from either the TPM owner or the assertion of physical
649 presence. As the clear commands present a real opportunity for a denial of service attack
650 there are mechanisms in place disabling the clear commands.

651 Disabling TPM_OwnerClear uses the TPM_DisableOwnerClear command. The state of ability
652 to execute TPM_OwnerClear is then held as one of the non-volatile flags.

653 Enablement of TPM_ForceClear is held in the volatile disableForceClear flag.
654 disableForceClear is set to FALSE during TPM_Init. To disable the command software
655 should issue the TPM_DisableForceClear command.

656 During the TPM startup processing anyone with physical access to the machine can issue
657 the TPM_ForceClear command. This command performs the clear operations if it has not
658 been disabled by vFlags.DisabledForceClear being TRUE.

659 The TPM can be configured to block all forms of clear operations. It is advisable to block
660 clear operations to prevent an otherwise trivial denial-of-service attack. The assumption is
661 the system startup code will issue the TPM_DisableForceClear on each power-cycle after it
662 is determined the TPM_ForceClear command will not be necessary. The purpose of the
663 TPM_ForceClear command is to recover from the state where the Owner has lost or
664 forgotten the TPM Owner-authentication-data.

665 The TPM_ForceClear must only be possible when the issuer has physical access to the
666 platform. The manufacturer of a platform determines the exact definition of physical access.

667 The commands to clear a TPM require either TPM Owner authentication, TPM_OwnerClear,
668 or the assertion of physical presence, TPM_ForceClear.

669 **End of informative comment**

- 670 1. The TPM MUST support the clear operations.
- 671 a. Clear operations MUST be authenticated by either the TPM Owner or physical
672 presence
 - 673 b. The TPM MUST support mechanisms to disable the clear operations
- 674 2. The clear operation MUST perform at least the following actions
- 675 a. SRK invalidation
 - 676 b. tpmProof invalidation
 - 677 c. TPM Owner authentication value invalidation
 - 678 d. Resetting non-volatile values to defaults
 - 679 e. Invalidation of volatile values
 - 680 f. Invalidation of internal resources
- 681 3. The clear operation must not affect the EK.

682 10. Physical Presence

683 **Start of informative comment**

684 This specification describes commands that require physical presence at the platform before
685 the command will operate. Physical presence implies direct interaction by a person – i.e.
686 Operator with the platform / TPM.

687 The type of controls that imply special privilege include:

- 688 • Clearing an existing Owner from the TPM,
- 689 • Temporarily deactivating a TPM,
- 690 • Temporarily disabling a TPM.

691 Physical presence implies a level of control and authorization to perform basic
692 administrative tasks and to bootstrap management and access control mechanisms.

693 Protection of low-level administrative interfaces can be provided by physical and electrical
694 methods; or by software; or a combination of both. The guiding principle for designers is the
695 protection mechanism should be difficult or impossible to spoof by rogue software.
696 Designers should take advantage of restricted states inherent in platform operation. For
697 example, in a PC, software executed during the power-on self-test (POST) cannot be
698 disturbed without physical access to the platform. Alternatively, a hardware switch
699 indicating physical presence is very difficult to circumvent by rogue software or remote
700 attackers.

701 TPM and platform manufacturers will determine the actual implementation approach. The
702 strength of the protection mechanisms is determined by an evaluation of the platform.

703 Physical presence indication is implemented as a flag in volatile memory known as the
704 PhysicalPresenceV flag. When physical presence is established (TRUE) several TPM
705 commands are able to function. They include:

- 706 TPM_PhysicalEnable,
- 707 TPM_PhysicalDisable,
- 708 TPM_PhysicalSetDeactivated,
- 709 TPM_ForceClear,
- 710 TPM_SetOwnerInstall,

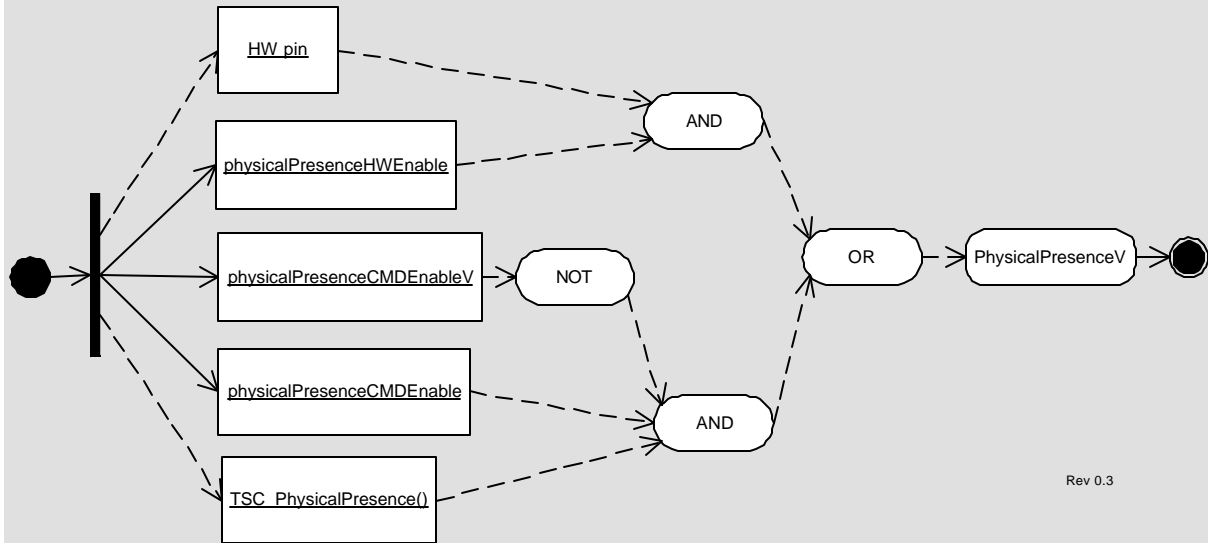
711 In order to execute these commands, the TPM must obtain unambiguous assurance that
712 the operation is authorized by physical-presence at the platform. The command processor
713 in the I/O component checks the physicalPresenceV flag before continuing processing of
714 TPM command blocks. The volatile physicalPresenceV flag is set only while the Operator is
715 indeed physically present.

716 TPM designers should take precautions to ensure testing of the physicalPresenceV flag
717 value is not mask-able. For example, a special bus cycle could be used or a dedicated line
718 implemented.

719 There is an exception to physical presence semantics that allows a remote entity the ability
720 to assert physical presence when that entity is not physically present. The
721 TSC_PhysicalPresence command is used to change polarity of the physicalPresenceV flag.

722 Its use is heavily guarded. See sections describing the TPM Opt -In component; and Volatile
723 and Non-volatile memory components.

724 The following diagram illustrates the flow of logic controlling updates to the
725 physicalPresenceV flag:



Rev 0.3

726
727 Figure 10:a - Physical Presence Control Logic

728 This diagram shows that the vFlags.physicalPresenceV flag may be updated by either a HW
729 pin or through the TSC_PhysicalPresence command, but gated by persistent control flags
730 and a temporal lock. Observe, the reverse logic surrounding the use of
731 TSC_PhysicalPresence command. When the physicalPresenceCMDEnable flag is set, and
732 the physicalPresenceCMDEnableV is not set, and the TSC_PhysicalPresence command may
733 execute.

734 The physicalPresenceV flag may be overridden by unambiguous physical presence.
735 Conceptually, the use of dedicated electrical hardware providing a trusted path to the
736 Operator has higher precedence than the physicalPresenceV flag value. Implementers
737 should take this into consideration when implementing physical presence indicators.

738 **End of informative comment**

- 739 1. The requirement for physical presence **MUST** be met by the platform manufacturer
740 using some physical mechanism.
- 741 2. It **SHALL** be impossible to intercept or subvert indication of physical presence to the
742 TPM by the execution of software on the platform.

743 **11. Root of Trust for Reporting (RTR)**

744 **Start of informative comment**

745 The RTR is responsible for establishing platform identities, reporting platform
746 configurations, protecting reported values and establishing a context for attesting to
747 reported values. The RTR shares responsibility of protecting measurement digests with the
748 RTS.

749 The interaction between the RTR and RTS is a critical component. The design and
750 implementation of the interaction between the RTR and RTS should mitigate observation
751 and tampering with the messages. It is strongly encouraged that the RTR and RTS
752 implementation occur in the same package such there are no external observation points.
753 For a silicon based TPM this would imply that the RTR and RTS are in the same silicon
754 package with no external busses.

755 **End of informative comment**

- 756 1. An instantiation of the RTS and RTR SHALL do the following:
- 757 a. Be resistant to all forms of software attack and to the forms of physical attack
758 implied by the platform's Protection Profile
 - 759 b. Supply an accurate digest of all sequences of presented integrity metrics

760 **11.1 Platform Identity**

761 **Start of informative comment**

762 The RTR is a cryptographic identity in use to distinguish and authenticate an individual
763 TPM. The TPM uses the RTR to provide As the RTR is cryptographically unique the use of
764 the RTR must only occur in controlled circumstances.

765 In the TPM, the Endorsement Key (EK) is the RTR.

766 Prior to any use of the TPM, the RTR must be instantiated. Instantiation may occur during
767 TPM manufacturing or platform manufacturing. The business issues and manufacturing
768 flow determines how a specific TPM and platform is personalized.

769 The EK is cryptographically unique and bound to the TPM.

770 The EK is only available for two operations: establishing the TPM Owner and establishing
771 Attestation Identity Key (AIK) values and credentials. There is a prohibition on the use of the
772 EK for any other operation.

773 **End of informative comment**

- 774 1. The RTR MUST have a cryptographic identity.
- 775 a. The cryptographic identity of the RTR is the Endorsement Key (EK).
- 776 2. The EK MUST be
- 777 a. Statistically unique
 - 778 b. Difficult to forge or counterfeit
 - 779 c. Verifiable during the AIK creation process
- 780 3. The EK SHALL only participate in

- 781 a. TPM Ownership insertion
- 782 b. AIK creation and verification

783 11.2 RTR to Platform Binding

784 Start of informative comment

785 When performing validation of the EK and the platform the challenger wishes to have
786 knowledge of the binding of RTR to platform. The RTR is bound to a TPM hence if the
787 platform can show the binding of TPM to platform the challenger can reasonably believe the
788 RTR and platform binding.

789 The TPM cannot provide all of the information necessary for the challenger to trust in the
790 binding. That information comes from the manufacturing process and occurs outside the
791 control of the TPM.

792 End of informative comment

- 793 1. The EK is transitively bound to the Platform via the TPM as follows:
 - 794 a. An EK is bound to one and only one TPM (i.e., there is a one to one correspondence
795 between an Endorsement Key and a TPM.)
 - 796 b. A TPM is bound to one and only one Platform. (i.e., there is a one to one
797 correspondence between a TPM and a Platform.)
 - 798 c. Therefore, an EK is bound to a Platform. (i.e., there is a one to one correspondence
799 between an Endorsement Key and a Platform.)

800 11.3 Platform Identity and Privacy Considerations

801 Start of informative comment

802 The uniqueness property of cryptographic identities raises concerns that use of that identity
803 could result in aggregation of activity logs. Analysis of the aggregated activity could reveal
804 personal information that a user of a platform would not otherwise approve for distribution
805 to the aggregators. Both EK and AIK identities have this property.

806 To counter undesired aggregation, TCG encourages the use of domain specific AIK keys and
807 restricts the use of the EK key. The platform owner controls generation and distribution of
808 AIK public keys.

809 If a digital signature was performed by the EK, then any entity could track the use of the
810 EK. So use of the EK as a signature is cryptographically sound, but this does not ensure
811 privacy. Therefore, a mechanism to allow verifiers (human or machine) to determine that
812 the TPM really signed the message without using the EK is required.

813 End of informative comment

814 11.4 Attestation Identity Keys

815 Start of informative comment

816 An Attestation Identity Key (AIK) is an alias for the EK. AIK provide signatures and not
817 encryption. The TPM can create a virtually unlimited number of AIK.

818 The AIK must contain identification such that the TPM can properly enforce the restrictions
819 placed on an AIK.

820 The AIK is an asymmetric key pair. For interoperability, the AIK is an RSA 2048-bit key. The
821 TPM must protect the private portion of the asymmetric key and ensure that the value is
822 never exposed.

823 The AIK only signs PCR data. The TPM must enforce this restriction. If the AIK did sign
824 additional information, it is possible for an attacker to create a block of data that appears to
825 be a PCR value. By enforcing the PCR restriction this attack is never possible.

826 **End of informative comment**

827 1. The TPM MUST permanently mark an AIK such that all subsequent uses of the AIK the
828 AIK restrictions are enforced.

829 2. An AIK MUST be:

830 a. Statistically unique

831 b. Difficult to forge or counterfeit

832 c. Verifiable to challengers

833 3. For interoperability the AIK MUST be

834 a. An RSA 2048-bit key

835 4. The AIK MUST only sign data generated by the TPM

836 **11.4.1 AIK Creation**

837 **Start of informative comment**

838 As the AIK is an alias for the EK, the AIK creation process requires TPM Owner
839 authorization. The process actually requires two TPM Owner authorizations; creation and
840 credential activation.

841 The credential creation process is outside the control of the TPM; however, the entity
842 identification that will create the credential must occur during the creation process.

843 **End of informative comment**

844 1. The TPM Owner MUST authorize the AIK creation process.

845 2. The TPM MUST use a protected function to perform the AIK creation.

846 3. The TPM Owner MUST indicate the entity that will provide the AIK credential as part of
847 the AIK creation process.

848 4. The TPM Owner MAY indicate that NO credential will ever be created. If the TPM Owner
849 does indicate that no credential will be provided the TPM MUST ensure that no
850 credential can be created.

851 5. The TTP MAY apply policies to determine if the presented AIK should be granted a
852 credential.

853 6. The credential request package MUST be useable by only the Privacy CA selected by the
854 TPM Owner.

- 855 7. The AIK credential MUST be only obtainable by the TPM that created the AIK credential
856 request.

857 **11.4.2 AIK Storage**

858 **Start of informative comment**

859 The AIK may be stored on some general-purpose storage device.

860 When held outside of the TPM the AIK sensitive data must be encrypted and integrity
861 protected.

862 **End of informative comment**

- 863 1. When held outside of the TPM AIK encryption and integrity protection MUST protect the
864 AIK sensitive information
- 865 2. The migration of AIK from one TPM to another MUST be prohibited

866 **12. Root of Trust for Storage (RTS)**

867 **Start of informative comment**

868 The RTS provides protection on data in use by the TPM but held in external storage devices.
869 The RTS provides confidentiality and integrity for the external blobs.

870 The RTS also provides the mechanism to ensure that the release of information only occurs
871 in a named environment. The naming of an environment uses the PCR selection to
872 enumerate the values.

873 Data protected by the RTS can migrate to other TPM.

874 **End of informative comment**

- 875 1. The number and size of values held by the RTS SHOULD be limited only by the volume
876 of storage available on the platform
- 877 2. The TPM MUST ensure that TPM_PERMANENT_DATA -> tpmProof is only inserted into
878 TPM internally generated and non-migratable information.

879 **12.1 Loading and Unloading Blobs**

880 **Start of informative comment**

881 The TPM provides several commands to store and load RTS controlled data.

	Class	Command	Analog	Comment
1	Data / Internal / TPM	TPM_MakeIdentity	TPM_ActivateIdentity	Special purpose data
2	Data / External / TPM	TSS_Bind	TPM_Unbind	
3	Data / Internal / PCR	TPM_Seal	TPM_Unseal	
4	Data / External / PCR			
5	Key / Internal / TPM	TPM_CreateWrapKey	TPM_LoadKey	
6	Key / External / TPM	TSS_WrapKey	TPM_LoadKey	
7	Key / Internal / PCR			
8	Key / External / PCR	TSS_WrapKeyToPcr	TPM_LoadKey	

882 13. Transport Sessions and Authorization Protocols

883 **Start of informative comment**

884 The purpose of the authorization protocols and mechanisms is to prove to the TPM that the
885 requestor has permission to perform a function and use some object. The proof comes from
886 the knowledge of a shared secret.

887 AuthData is available for the TPM Owner and each entity (keys, for example) that the TPM
888 controls. The AuthData for the TPM Owner and the SRK are held within the TPM itself and
889 the AuthData for other entities are held with the entity.

890 The TPM Owner AuthData allows the Owner to prove ownership of the TPM. Proving
891 ownership of the TPM does not immediately allow all operations – the TPM Owner is not a
892 “super user” and additional AuthData must be provided for each entity or operation that
893 has protection.

894 The TPM treats knowledge of the AuthData as complete proof of ownership of the entity. No
895 other checks are necessary. The requestor (any entity that wishes to execute a command on
896 the TPM or use a specific entity) may have additional protections and requirements where
897 he or she (or it) saves the AuthData; however, the TPM places no additional requirements.

898 There are three protocols to securely pass a proof of knowledge of AuthData from requestor
899 to TPM; the “Object-Independent Authorization Protocol” (OIAP), the “Object-Specific
900 Authorization Protocol” (OSAP) and the “Delegate-Specific Authorization Protocol” (DSAP).
901 The OIAP supports multiple authorization sessions for arbitrary entities. The OSAP
902 supports an authentication session for a single entity and enables the confidential
903 transmission of new authorization information. The DSAP supports the delegation of owner
904 or entity authorization.

905 New authorization information is inserted by the “AuthData Insertion Protocol” (ADIP)
906 during the creation of an entity. The “AuthData Change Protocol” (ADCP) and the
907 “Asymmetric Authorization Change Protocol” (AACP) allow the changing of the AuthData for
908 an entity. The protocol definitions allow expansion of protocol types to additional TCG
909 required protocols and vendor specific protocols.

910 The protocols use a “rolling nonce” paradigm. This requires that a nonce from one side be in
911 use only for a message and its reply. For instance, the TPM would create a nonce and send
912 that on a reply. The requestor would receive that nonce and then include it in the next
913 request. The TPM would validate that the correct nonce was in the request and then create
914 a new nonce for the reply. This mechanism is in place to prevent replay attacks and man-
915 in-the-middle attacks.

916 The basic protocols do not provide long-term protection of AuthData that is the hash of a
917 password or other low-entropy entities. The TPM designer and application writer must
918 supply additional protocols if protection of these types of data is necessary.

919 The design criterion of the protocols is to allow for ownership authentication, command and
920 parameter authentication and prevent replay and man-in-the-middle attacks.

921 The passing of the AuthData, nonces and other parameters must follow specific guidelines
922 so that commands coming from different computer architectures will interoperate properly.

923 **End of informative comment**

924 1. AuthData MUST use one of the following protocols

- 925 a. OIAP
- 926 b. OSAP
- 927 c. DSAP
- 928 2. Entity creation MUST use one of the following protocols
- 929 a. ADIP
- 930 3. Changing AuthData MUST use one of the following protocols
- 931 a. ADCP
- 932 b. AACP
- 933 4. The TPM MAY support additional protocols to authenticate, insert and change
- 934 AuthData.
- 935 5. When a command has more than one AuthData value
- 936 a. Each AuthData MUST use the same SHA-1 of the parameters
- 937 6. Keys MAY specify authDataUsage -> TPM_AUTH_NEVER
- 938 a. If the caller changes the tag from TPM_TAG_RQU_AUTH1_xxx to
- 939 TPM_TAG_RQU_XXX the TPM SHALL ignore the AuthData values
- 940 b. If the caller leaves the tag as TPM_TAG_RQU_AUTH1
- 941 i. The TPM will compute the AuthData based on the value store in the AuthData
- 942 location within the key, IGNORING the state of the AuthDataUsage flag.
- 943 c. Users may choose to use a well-known value for the AuthData when setting
- 944 AuthDataUsage to NEVER.
- 945 d. If a key has AuthDataUsage set to TPM_AUTH_ALWAYS but is received in a
- 946 command with the tag TPM_TAG_RQU_COMMAND, the command MUST return an
- 947 error code.
- 948 7. For commands that normally have 2 authorization sessions, if the tag specifies only one
- 949 in the parameter array, then the first session listed is ignored (authDataUsage must be
- 950 NEVER for this key) and the incoming session data is used for the second auth session
- 951 in the list.
- 952 8. Keys MAY specify AuthDataUsage -> TPM_AUTH_PRIV_USE_ONLY
- 953 a. If the key used in a command to read/access the public portion of the key (e.g.
- 954 TPM_CertifyKey, TPM_GetPubKey)
- 955 i. If the caller changes the tag from TPM_TAG_RQU_AUTH1_xxx to
- 956 TPM_TAG_RQU_XXX the TPM SHALL ignore the AuthData values
- 957 ii. If the caller leaves the tag as TPM_TAG_RQU_AUTH1
- 958 iii. The TPM will compute the AuthData based on the value store in the AuthData
- 959 location within the key, IGNORING the state of the AuthDataUsage flag
- 960 b. else if the key used in command to read/access the private portion of the key(e.g.
- 961 TPM_Sign)

- 962 i. If the tag is TPM_TAG_RQU_COMMAND, the command MUST return an error
963 code.

964 13.1 Authorization Session Setup

965 **Start of informative comment**

966 The TPM provides two protocols for authorizing the use of entities without revealing the
967 AuthData on the network or the connection to the TPM. In both cases, the protocol
968 exchanges nonce-data so that both sides of the transaction can compute a hash using
969 shared secrets and nonce-data. Each side generates the hash value and can compare to the
970 value transmitted. Network listeners cannot directly infer the AuthData from the hashed
971 objects sent over the network.

972 The first protocol is the Object-Independent Authorization Protocol (OIAP), which allows the
973 exchange of nonces with a specific TPM. Once an OIAP session is established, its nonces
974 can be used to authorize the use of any entity managed by the TPM. The session can live
975 indefinitely until either party requests the session termination. The TPM_OIAP function
976 starts the OIAP session.

977 The second protocol is the Object Specific Authorization Protocol (OSAP)". The OSAP allows
978 establishment of an authentication session for a single entity. The session creates nonces
979 that can authorize multiple commands without additional session-establishment overhead,
980 but is bound to a specific entity. The TPM_OSAP command starts the OSAP session. The
981 TPM_OSAP specifies the entity to which the authorization is bound.

982 Most commands allow either form of authorization protocol. In general, however, the OIAP
983 is preferred – it is more generally useful because it allows usage of the same session to
984 provide authorization for different entities. The OSAP is, however, necessary for operations
985 that set or reset AuthData.

986 OIAP sessions were designed for reasons of efficiency; only one setup process is required for
987 potentially many authorizations.

988 An OSAP session is doubly efficient because only one setup process is required for
989 potentially many authorization calculations and the entity AuthData secret is required only
990 once. This minimizes exposure of the AuthData secret and can minimize human interaction
991 in the case where a person supplies the AuthData information. The disadvantage of the
992 OSAP is that a distinct session needs to be setup for each entity that requires authorization.
993 The OSAP creates an ephemeral secret that is used throughout the session instead of the
994 entity AuthData secret. The ephemeral secret can be used to provide confidentiality for the
995 introduction of new AuthData during the creation of new entities. Termination of the OSAP
996 occurs in two ways. Either side can request session termination (as usual) but the TPM
997 forces the termination of an OSAP session after use of the ephemeral secret for the
998 introduction of new AuthData.

999 For both the OSAP and the OIAP, session setup is independent of the commands that are
:000 authorized. In the case of OIAP, the requestor sends the TPM_OIAP command, and with the
:001 response generated by the TPM, can immediately begin authorizing object actions. The
:002 OSAP is very similar, and starts with the requestor sending a TPM_OSAP operation, naming
:003 the entity to which the authorization session should be bound.

:004 The DSAP session is to provide delegated authorization information.

:005 All session types use a “rolling nonce” paradigm. This means that the TPM creates a new
:006 nonce value each time the TPM receives a command using the session.

:007 Example OIAP and OSAP sessions are used to illustrate session setup and use. The
:008 fictitious command named TPM_Example occupies the place where an ordinary TPM
:009 command might be used, but does not have command specific parameters. The session
:010 connects to a key object within the TPM. The key contains AuthData that will be used to
:011 secure the session.

:012 There could be as many as 2 authorization sessions applied to the execution of a single TPM
:013 command or as few as 0. The number of sessions used is determined by TCG 1.2 Command
:014 Specification and is indicated by the command ordinal parameter.

:015 It is also possible to secure authorization sessions using ephemeral shared-secrets. Rather
:016 than using AuthData contained in the stored object (e.g. key), the AuthData is supplied as a
:017 parameter to OIAP or OSAP session creation. In the examples below the key.usageAuth
:018 parameter is replaced by the ephemeral secret.

:019 **End of informative comment**

:020 **13.2 Parameter Declarations for OIAP and OSAP Examples**

:021 **Start of informative comment**

:022 To follow OIAP and OSAP protocol examples (Table 13:c and Table 13:d), the reader should
:023 become familiar with the parameters declared in Table 13:a and Table 13:b.

:024 Several conventions are used in the parameter tables that may facilitate readability.

:025 The Param column (Table 13:a) identifies the sequence in which parameters are packaged
:026 into a command or response message as well as the size in bytes of the parameter value. If
:027 this entry in the row is blank, that parameter is not included in the message. <> in the size
:028 column means that the size of the element is variable. It is defined either explicitly by the
:029 preceding parameter, or implicitly by the parameter type.

:030 The HMAC column similarly identifies the parameters that are included in HMAC
:031 calculations. This column also indicates the default parameters that are included in the
:032 audit log. Exceptions are noted under the specific ordinal, e.g. TPM_ExecuteTransport.

:033 The Type column identifies the TCG data type corresponding to the passed value. An
:034 encapsulation of the parameter type is not part of the command message.

:035 The Name column is a fictitious variable name that aids in following the examples and
:036 descriptions.

:037 The double-lined row separator distinguishes authorization session parameters from
:038 command parameters. In Table 13:a the TPM_Example command has three parameters;
:039 keyHandle, inArgOne and inArgTwo. The tag, paramSize and ordinal parameters are
:040 message header values describing contents of a command message. The parameters below
:041 the double-lined row are OIAP / OSAP /DSAP or transport authorization session related. If
:042 a second authorization session were used, the table would show a second authorization
:043 section delineated by a second double-lined row. The authorization session parameters
:044 identify shared-secret values, session nonces, session digest and flags.

:045 In this example, a single authorization session is used signaled by the
:046 TPM_TAG_RQU_AUTH1_COMMAND tag.

:047 For an OIAP or transport session, the TPM_AUTHDATA description column specifies the
:048 HMAC key.

:049 For an OSAP or DSAP session, the HMAC key is the shared secret that was calculated
:050 during the session setup, not the key specified in the description. The key specified in the
:051 description was previously used in the shared secret calculation.

Param		HMAC		Type	Name	Description
#	Sz	#	Sz			
1	2			TPM_TAG	tag	TPM_TAG_RQU_AUTH1_COMMAND
2	4			UINT32	paramSize	Total number of input bytes including paramSize and tag
3	4	1S	4	TPM_COMMAND_CODE	ordinal	Command ordinal, fixed value of TPM_Example
4	4			TPM_KEY_HANDLE	keyHandle	Handle of a loaded key.
5	1	2S	1	BOOL	inArgOne	The first input argument
6	20	3S	20	UINT32	inArgTwo	The second input argument.
7	4			TPM_AUTHHANDLE	authHandle	The authorization handle used for keyHandle authorization.
		2H1	20	TPM_NONCE	authLastNonceEven	Even nonce previously generated by TPM to cover inputs
8	20	3 H1	20	TPM_NONCE	nonceOdd	Nonce generated by system associated with authHandle
9	1	4 H1	1	BOOL	continueAuthSession	The continue use flag for the authorization handle
10	20			TPM_AUTHDATA	inAuth	The AuthData digest for inputs and keyHandle. HMAC key: key.usageAuth.

:052

:053

Table 13:a - Authorization Protocol Input Parameters

Param		HMAC		Type	Name	Description
#	Sz	#	Sz			
1	2			TPM_TAG	Tag	TPM_TAG_RSP_AUTH1_COMMAND
2	4			UINT32	paramSize	Total number of output bytes including paramSize and tag
3	4	1S	4	TPM_RESULT	returnCode	The return code of the operation. See section 4.3.
		2S	4	TPM_COMMAND_CODE	ordinal	Command ordinal, fixed value of TPM_Example
4	4	3S	4	UINT32	outArgOne	Output argument
5	20	2 H1	20	TPM_NONCE	nonceEven	Even nonce newly generated by TPM to cover outputs
		3 H1	20	TPM_NONCE	nonceOdd	Nonce generated by system associated with authHandle
6	1	4 H1	1	BOOL	continueAuthSession	Continue use flag, TRUE if handle is still active
7	20			TPM_AUTHDATA	resAuth	The AuthData digest for the returned parameters. HMAC key: key.usageAuth.

:054

:055

:056

:057

Table 13:b - Authorization Protocol Output Parameters

End of informative comment

:058 **13.2.1 Object-Independent Authorization Protocol (OIAP)**

:059 **Start of informative comment**

:060 The purpose of this section is to describe the authorization-related actions of a TPM when it
:061 receives a command that has been authorized with the OIAP protocol. OIAP uses the
:062 TPM_OIAP command to create the authorization session.

:063 Many commands use OIAP authorization. The following description is therefore necessarily
:064 abstract. A fictitious TPM command, TPM_Example is used to represent ordinary TPM
:065 commands.

:066 Assume that a TPM user wishes to send command TPM_Example. This is an authorized
:067 command that uses the key denoted by keyHandle. The user must know the AuthData for
:068 keyHandle (key.usageAuth) as this is the entity that requires authorization and this secret
:069 is used in the authorization calculation. Let us assume for this example that the caller of
:070 TPM_Example does not need to authorize the use of keyHandle for more than one
:071 command. This use model points to the selection of the OIAP as the authorization protocol.

:072 For the TPM_Example command, the inAuth parameter provides the authorization to
:073 execute the command. The following table shows the commands executed, the parameters
:074 created and the wire formats of all of the information.

:075 <inParamDigest> is the result of the following calculation: SHA1(ordinal, inArgOne,
:076 inArgTwo). <outParamDigest> is the result of the following calculation: SHA1(returnCode,
:077 ordinal, outArgOne). inAuthSetupParams refers to the following parameters, in this order:
:078 authLastNonceEven, nonceOdd, continueAuthSession. OutAuthSetupParams refers to the
:079 following parameters, in this order: nonceEven, nonceOdd, continueAuthSession

:080 There are two even nonces used to execute TPM_Example, the one generated as part of the
:081 TPM_OIAP command (labeled authLastNonceEven below) and the one generated with the
:082 output arguments of TPM_Example (labeled as nonceEven below).

Caller	On the wire	Dir	TPM
Send TPM_OIAP	TPM_OIAP	→	Create session Create authHandle Associate session and authHandle Generate authLastNonceEven Save authLastNonceEven with authHandle
Save authHandle, authLastNonceEven	authHandle, authLastNonceEven	←	Returns
Generate nonceOdd Compute inAuth = HMAC (key.usageAuth, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams) Save nonceOdd with authHandle			
Send TPM_Example	tag paramSize ordinal keyHandle inArgOne inArgTwo authHandle nonceOdd	→	TPM retrieves key.usageAuth (key must have been previously loaded) Verify authHandle points to a valid session, mismatch returns TPM_E_INVALIDAUTH Retrieve authLastNonceEven from internal session storage HM = HMAC (key.usageAuth, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to inAuth. If they do not compare return with TPM_E_INVALIDAUTH Execute TPM_Example and create returnCode

	continueAuthSession inAuth		Generate nonceEven to replace authLastNonceEven in session Set resAuth = HMAC(key.usageAuth, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams)
Save nonceEven HM = HMAC(key.usageAuth, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to resAuth. This verifies returnCode and output parameters.	tag paramSize returnCode outArgOne nonceEven continueAuthSession resAuth	←	Return output parameters If continueAuthSession is FALSE then destroy session

:083 Suppose now that the TPM user wishes to send another command using the same session.
 :084 For the purposes of this example, we will assume that the same example command is used
 :085 (ordinal = TPM_Example). However, a different key (newKey) with its own secret
 :086 (newKey.usageAuth) is to be operated on. To re-use the previous session, the
 :087 continueAuthSession output boolean must be TRUE.

:088 The previous example shows the command execution reusing an existing authorization
 :089 session. The parameters created and the wire formats of all of the information.

:090 In this case, authLastNonceEven is the nonceEven value returned by the TPM with the
 :091 output parameters from the first protocol example

:092

Caller	On the wire	Dir	TPM
Generate nonceOdd Compute inAuth = HMAC (newKey.usageAuth, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams) Save nonceOdd with authHandle			
Send TPM_Example	tag paramSize ordinal keyHandle inArgOne inArgTwo nonceOdd continueAuthSession inAuth	→	TPM retrieves newKey.usageAuth (newKey must have been previously loaded) Retrieve authLastNonceEven from internal session storage HM = HMAC (newKey.usageAuth, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to inAuth. If they do not compare return with TPM_E_INVALIDAUTH Execute TPM_Example and create returnCode Generate nonceEven to replace authLastNonceEven in session Set resAuth = HMAC(newKey.usageAuth, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams)
Save nonceEven HM = HMAC(newKey.usageAuth, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to resAuth. This verifies returnCode and output parameters.	tag paramSize returnCode outArgOne nonceEven continueAuthSession resAuth	←	Return output parameters If continueAuthSession is FALSE then destroy session

:093 The TPM user could then use the session for further authorization sessions. Suppose,
 :094 however, that the TPM user no longer requires the authorization session. There are three
 :095 possibilities in this case:

:096 The user issues a TPM_Terminate_Handle command to the TPM (section 5.3).

:097 The input argument `continueAuthSession` can be set to `FALSE` for the last command. In
:098 this case, the output `continueAuthSession` value will be `FALSE`.

:099 In some cases, the TPM automatically terminates the authorization session regardless of the
:100 input value of `continueAuthSession`. In this case as well, the output `continueAuthSession`
:101 value will be `FALSE`.

:102 When an authorization session is terminated for any reason, the TPM invalidates the
:103 session's handle and terminates the session's thread (releases all resources allocated to the
:104 session).

:105 **End of informative comment**

:106

:107 **OIAP Actions**

- :108 1. The TPM MUST verify that the authorization handle (H, say) referenced in the command
:109 points to a valid session. If it does not, the TPM returns the error code
:110 `TPM_INVALID_AUTHHANDLE`
- :111 2. The TPM SHALL retrieve the latest version of the caller's nonce (`nonceOdd`) and
:112 `continueAuthSession` flag from the input parameter list, and store it in internal TPM
:113 memory with the authSession 'H'.
- :114 3. The TPM SHALL retrieve the latest version of the TPM's nonce stored with the
:115 authorization session H (`authLastNonceEven`) computed during the previously executed
:116 command.
- :117 4. The TPM MUST retrieve the secret `AuthData` (`SecretE`, say) of the target entity. The
:118 entity and its secret must have been previously loaded into the TPM.
- :119 5. The TPM SHALL perform a HMAC calculation using the entity secret data, ordinal, input
:120 command parameters and authorization parameters according to previously specified
:121 normative regarding HMAC calculation.
- :122 6. The TPM SHALL compare HM to the `AuthData` value received in the input parameters. If
:123 they are different, the TPM returns the error code `TPM_AUTHFAIL` if the authorization
:124 session is the first session of a command, or `TPM_AUTH2FAIL` if the authorization
:125 session is the second session of a command. Otherwise, the TPM executes the command
:126 which (for this example) produces an output that requires authentication.
- :127 7. The TPM SHALL generate a nonce (`nonceEven`).
- :128 8. The TPM creates an HMAC digest to authenticate the return code, return values and
:129 authorization parameters to the same entity secret according to previously specified
:130 normative regarding HMAC calculation.
- :131 9. The TPM returns the return code, output parameters, authorization parameters and
:132 `AuthData` digest.
- :133 10. If the output `continueUse` flag is `FALSE`, then the TPM SHALL terminate the session.
:134 Future references to H will return an error.

:135 **13.3 Object-Specific Authorization Protocol (OSAP)**

:136 **Start of informative comment**

:137 This section describes the actions of a TPM when it receives a TPM command via OSAP
 :138 session. Many TPM commands may be sent to the TPM via an OSAP session. Therefore, the
 :139 following description is necessarily abstract.

:140 The OSAP session is initialized through the creation of an ephemeral secret which is used to
 :141 protect session traffic. Sessions are created using the TPM_OSAP command. This section
 :142 illustrates OSAP using a fictitious command called TPM_Example.

:143 Assume that a TPM user wishes to send the TPM_Example command to the TPM. The
 :144 keyHandle signifies that an OSAP session is being used and has the value "Auth1". The
 :145 user must know the AuthData for keyHandle (key.usageAuth) as this is the entity that
 :146 requires authorization and this secret is used in the authorization calculation.

:147 Let us assume that the sender needs to use this key multiple times but does not wish to
 :148 obtain the key secret more than once. This might be the case if the usage AuthData were
 :149 derived from a typed password. This use model points to the selection of the OSAP as the
 :150 authorization protocol.

:151 For the TPM_Example command, the inAuth parameter provides the authorization to
 :152 execute the command. The following table shows the commands executed, the parameters
 :153 created and the wire formats of all of the information.

:154 <inParamDigest> is the result of the following calculation: SHA1(ordinal, inArgOne,
 :155 inArgTwo). <outParamDigest> is the result of the following calculation: SHA1(returnCode,
 :156 ordinal, outArgOne). inAuthSetupParams refers to the following parameters, in this order:
 :157 authLastNonceEven, nonceOdd, continueAuthSession. OutAuthSetupParams refers to the
 :158 following parameters, in this order: nonceEven, nonceOdd, continueAuthSession

:159 In addition to the two even nonces generated by the TPM (authLastNonceEven and
 :160 nonceEven) that are used for TPM_OIAP, there is a third, labeled nonceEvenOSAP that is
 :161 used to generate the shared secret. For every even nonce, there is also an odd nonce
 :162 generated by the system.

Caller	On the wire	Dir	TPM
Send TPM_OSAP	TPM_OSAP keyHandle nonceOddOSAP	→	Create session & authHandle Generate authLastNonceEven Save authLastNonceEven with authHandle Save the ADIP encryption scheme with authHandle Generate nonceEvenOSAP Generate sharedSecret = HMAC(key.usageAuth, nonceEvenOSAP, nonceOddOSAP) Save keyHandle, sharedSecret with authHandle
Save authHandle, authLastNonceEven Generate sharedSecret = HMAC(key.usageAuth, nonceEvenOSAP, nonceOddOSAP) Save sharedSecret	authHandle, authLastNonceEven nonceEvenOSAP	←	Returns
Generate nonceOdd & save with authHandle. Compute inAuth = HMAC (sharedSecret, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams)			
Send TPM_Example	tag paramSize ordinal	→	Verify authHandle points to a valid session, mismatch returns TPM_AUTHFAIL Retrieve authLastNonceEven from internal session storage HM = HMAC (sharedSecret, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams)

	keyHandle inArgOne inArgTwo authHandle nonceOdd continueAuthSession inAuth		Compare HM to inAuth. If they do not compare return with TPM_AUTHFAIL Execute TPM_Example and create returnCode. If TPM_Example requires ADIP encryption, use the algorithm indicated when the OSAP session was set up. Generate nonceEven to replace authLastNonceEven in session Set resAuth = HMAC(sharedSecret, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams)
Save nonceEven HM = HMAC(sharedSecret, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to resAuth. This verifies returnCode and output parameters.	tag paramSize returnCode outArgOne nonceEven continueAuthSession resAuth	←	Return output parameters If continueAuthSession is FALSE then destroy session

:163 Table 13:c - Example OSAP Session

:164 Suppose now that the TPM user wishes to send another command using the same session
 :165 to operate on the same key. For the purposes of this example, we will assume that the same
 :166 ordinal is to be used (TPM_Example). To re-use the previous session, the
 :167 continueAuthSession output boolean must be TRUE.

:168 The following table shows the command execution, the parameters created and the wire
 :169 formats of all of the information.

:170 In this case, authLastNonceEven is the nonceEven value returned by the TPM with the
 :171 output parameters from the first execution of TPM_Example.

:172

Caller	On the wire	Dir	TPM
Generate nonceOdd Compute inAuth = HMAC (sharedSecret, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams) Save nonceOdd with authHandle			
Send TPM_Example	tag paramSize ordinal keyHandle inArgOne inArgTwo nonceOdd continueAuthSession inAuth	→	Retrieve authLastNonceEven from internal session storage HM = HMAC (sharedSecret, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to inAuth. If they do not compare return with TPM_AUTHFAIL Execute TPM_Example and create returnCode Generate nonceEven to replace authLastNonceEven in session Set resAuth = HMAC(sharedSecret, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams)
Save nonceEven HM = HMAC(sharedSecret, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to resAuth. This verifies returnCode and output parameters.	tag paramSize returnCode outArgOne nonceEven continueAuthSession resAuth	←	Return output parameters If continueAuthSession is FALSE then destroy session

:173 Table 13:d - Example Re-used OSAP Session

:174 The TPM user could then use the session for further authorization sessions or terminate it
 :175 in the ways that have been described above in TPM_OIAP. Note that termination of the
 :176 OSAP session causes the TPM to destroy the shared secret.

:177 **End of informative comment**

:178 **OSAP Actions**

- :179 1. The TPM MUST have been able to retrieve the shared secret (Shared, say) of the target
 :180 entity when the authorization session was established with TPM_OSAP. The entity and
 :181 its secret must have been previously loaded into the TPM.
- :182 2. The TPM MUST verify that the authorization handle (H, say) referenced in the command
 :183 points to a valid session. If it does not, the TPM returns the error code
 :184 TPM_INVALID_AUTHHANDLE.

- :185 3. The TPM MUST calculate the HMAC (HM1, say) of the command parameters according
:186 to previously specified normative regarding HMAC calculation.
- :187 4. The TPM SHALL compare HM1 to the AuthData value received in the command. If they
:188 are different, the TPM returns the error code TPM_AUTHFAIL if the authorization session
:189 is the first session of a command, or TPM_AUTH2FAIL if the authorization session is the
:190 second session of a command., the TPM executes command C1 which produces an
:191 output (O, say) that requires authentication and uses a particular return code (RC, say).
- :192 5. The TPM SHALL generate the latest version of the even nonce (nonceEven).
- :193 6. The TPM MUST calculate the HMAC (HM2) of the return parameters according to
:194 previously specified normative regarding HMAC calculation.
- :195 7. The TPM returns HM2 in the parameter list.
- :196 8. The TPM SHALL retrieve the continue flag from the received command. If the flag is
:197 FALSE, the TPM SHALL terminate the session and destroy the thread associated with
:198 handle H.
- :199 9. If the shared secret was used to provide confidentiality for data in the received
:200 command, the TPM SHALL terminate the session and destroy the thread associated with
:201 handle H.
- :202 10. Each time that access to an entity (key) is authorized using OSAP, the TPM MUST
:203 ensure that the OSAP shared secret is that derived from the entity using TPM_OSAP.

:204 **13.4 Authorization Session Handles**

:205 **Start of informative comment**

:206 The TPM generates authorization handles to allow for the tracking of information regarding
:207 a specific authorization invocation.

:208 The TPM saves information specific to the authorization, such as the nonce values,
:209 ephemeral secrets and type of authentication in use.

:210 The TPM may create any internal representation of the handle that is appropriate for the
:211 TPM's design. The requestor always uses the handle in the authorization structure to
:212 indicate authorization structure in use.

:213 The TPM must support a minimum of two concurrent authorization handles. The use of
:214 these handles is to allow the Owner to have an authorization active in addition to an active
:215 authorization for an entity.

:216 To ensure garbage collection and the proper removal of security information, the requestor
:217 should terminate all handles. Termination of the handle uses the continue-use flag to
:218 indicate to the TPM that the handle should be terminated.

:219 Termination of a handle instructs the TPM to perform garbage collection on all AuthData.
:220 Garbage collection includes the deletion of the ephemeral secret.

:221 **End of informative comment**

- :222 1. The TPM MUST support authorization handles. The TPM MUST support a minimum of
:223 three concurrent authorization handles.

- :224 2. The TPM MUST support authorization-handle termination. The termination includes
:225 secure deletion of all authorization session information.

:226 **13.5 Authorization-Data Insertion Protocol (ADIP)**

:227 **Start of informative comment**

:228 The creation of AuthData is the responsibility of the entity owner. He or she may use
:229 whatever process he or she wishes. The transmission of the AuthData from the owner to the
:230 TPM requires confidentiality and integrity. The encryption of the AuthData meets these
:231 requirements. The confidentiality and integrity requirements assume the insertion of the
:232 AuthData occurs over a network. While local insertions of the data would not require these
:233 measures, the protocol is established to be consistent with both local and remote insertions.

:234 When the requestor is sending the AuthData to the TPM, the command to load the data
:235 requires the authorization of the entity owner. For example, to create a new TPM ID and set
:236 its AuthData requires the AuthData of the TPM Owner.

:237 The confidentiality of the transmission comes from the encryption of the AuthData, and the
:238 integrity comes from the ability of the owner to verify that the authorization is being sent to
:239 a TPM and that only a specific TPM can decrypt the data.

:240 The mandatory mechanism uses the following features of the TPM, OSAP and HMAC.

:241 The creation of a new entity requires the authorization of the entity owner. When the
:242 requestor starts the creation process, the creator must use OSAP.

:243 The creator builds an encryption key using a SHA-1 hash of the shared secret from the
:244 OSAP mechanism and the nonce (authLastNonceEven) returned by the TPM from the
:245 TPM_OSAP command.

:246 The creator encrypts the new AuthData using the key from the previous step as a one-time
:247 pad with XOR and then sends this encrypted data along with the creation request to the
:248 TPM.

:249 The TPM may support AES as an additional ADIP encryption algorithm.

:250 The TPM decrypts the AuthData using the OSAP shared secret and authLastNonceEven,
:251 creates the new entity.

:252 The TPM includes the sends the reply back to the creator using the new AuthData as the
:253 secret value of the HMAC.

:254 The creator believes that the OSAP creates a shared secret known only to the creator and
:255 the TPM. The TPM believes that the creator is the entity owner by their knowledge of the
:256 parent entity AuthData. The creator believes that the process completed correctly and that
:257 the AuthData is correct because the HMAC will only verify with the OSAP secret.

:258 The ADIP allows for the creation of new entities and the secure insertion of the new entity
:259 AuthData. The transmission of the new AuthData uses encryption with the key being a
:260 shared secret of an OSAP session.

:261 The OSAP session must be created using the owner of the new entity.

:262 In the following example, we want to send the previously described command
:263 TPM_EXAMPLE to create a new entity. In the example, we assume there is a third input
:264 parameter newAuth, and that one of the input parameters is named parentHandle to

:265 reference the parent for the new entity (TPM Owner in some circumstances such as the SRK
:266 and its children, otherwise a key).

267

Caller	On the wire	Dir	TPM
Send TPM_OSAP	TPM_OSAP parentHandle nonceOddOSAP	→	Create session & authHandle Generate authLastNonceEven Save authLastNonceEven with authHandle Save the ADIP encryption scheme with authHandle Generate nonceEvenOSAP Generate sharedSecret = HMAC(parent.usageAuth, nonceEvenOSAP, nonceOddOSAP) Save parentHandle, sharedSecret with authHandle
Save authHandle, authLastNonceEven Generate sharedSecret = HMAC(parent.usageAuth, nonceEvenOSAP, nonceOddOSAP) Save sharedSecret	authHandle, authLastNonceEven nonceEvenOSAP	←	Returns
Generate nonceOdd & save with authHandle. Compute input parameter newAuth = XOR(entityAuthData, SHA1(sharedSecret, authLastNonceEven)) Compute inAuth = HMAC (sharedSecret, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams)			
Send TPM_Example	tag paramSize ordinal keyHandle inArgOne inArgTwo newAuth authHandle nonceOdd continueAuthSession inAuth	→	Verify authHandle points to a valid session, mismatch returns TPM_AUTHFAIL Retrieve authLastNonceEven from internal session storage HM = HMAC (sharedSecret, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to inAuth. If they do not compare return with TPM_AUTHFAIL Compute entityAuthData = XOR(newAuth, SHA1(sharedSecret, authLastNonceEven)) Execute TPM_Example, create entity and build returnCode. If TPM_Example requires ADIP encryption, use the algorithm indicated when the OSAP session was set up. Generate nonceEven to replace authLastNonceEven in session Set resAuth = HMAC(sharedSecret, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams)

:268

<p>Save nonceEven HM = HMAC(sharedSecret, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to resAuth. This verifies returnCode and output parameters.</p>	<p>tag paramSize returnCode outArgOne nonceEven continueAuthSession resAuth</p>	<p>←</p>	<p>Return output parameters Destroy auth session associated with authHandle</p>
---	---	----------	---

:269 Table 13:e - Example ADIP Session

:270

:271 **End of informative comment**

- :272 1. The TPM MUST enable ADIP by using the OSAP. The TPM MUST encrypt the AuthData
:273 for the new entity by performing an XOR using the shared secret created by the OSAP.
- :274 2. The TPM MUST destroy the OSAP session whenever a new entity is created.

:275 **13.6 AuthData Change Protocol (ADCP)**

:276 **Start of informative comment**

:277 All entities from the Owner to the SRK to individual keys and data blobs have AuthData.
:278 This data may need to change at some point in time after the entity creation. The ADCP
:279 allows the entity owner to change the AuthData. The entity owner of a wrapped key is the
:280 owner of the parent key.

:281 A requirement is that the owner must remember the old AuthData. The only mechanism to
:282 change the AuthData when the entity owner forgets the current value is to delete the entity
:283 and then recreate it.

:284 To protect the data from exposure to eavesdroppers or other attackers, the AuthData uses
:285 the same encryption mechanism in use during the ADIP.

:286 Changing AuthData requires opening two authentication handles. The first handle
:287 authenticates the entity owner (or parent) and the right to load the entity. This first handle
:288 is an OSAP and supplies the data to encrypt the new AuthData according to the ADIP
:289 protocol. The second handle can be either an OIAP or an OSAP, it authorizes access to the
:290 entity for which the AuthData is to be changed.

:291 The AuthData in use to generate the OSAP shared secret must be the AuthData of the
:292 parent of the entity to which the change will be made.

:293 When changing the AuthData for the SRK, the first handle OSAP must be setup using the
:294 TPM Owner AuthData. This is because the SRK does not have a parent, per se.

:295 If the SRKAuth data is known to userA and userB, userA can snoop on userB while userB
:296 is changing the AuthData for a child of the SRK, and deduce the child's newAuth.
:297 Therefore, if SRKAuth is a well known value, TPM_ChangeAuthAsymStart and
:298 TPM_ChangeAuthAsymFinish are preferred over TPM_ChangeAuth when changing
:299 AuthData for children of the SRK.

:300 This applies to all children of the SRK, including TPM identities.

:301 **End of informative comment**

- :302 1. Changing AuthData for the TPM SHALL require authorization of the current TPM Owner.
:303 2. Changing AuthData for the SRK SHALL require authorization of the TPM Owner.
:304 3. If SRKAuth is a well known value, TPM_ChangeAuth SHOULD NOT be used to change
:305 the AuthData value of a child of the SRK, including the TPM identities.
:306 4. All other entities SHALL require authorization of the parent entity.

:307 **13.7 Asymmetric Authorization Change Protocol (AACP)**

:308 **Start of informative comment**

:309 This is now deprecated. Use the normal change session inside of a transport session with
:310 confidentiality.

:311 This asymmetric change protocol allows the entity owner to change entity authorization,
:312 under the parent's execution authorization, to a value of which the parent has no
:313 knowledge.

:314 In contrast, the TPM_ChangeAuth command uses the parent entity AuthData to create the
:315 shared secret that encrypts the new AuthData for an entity. This creates a situation where
:316 the parent entity ALWAYS knows the AuthData for entities in the tree below the parent.
:317 There may be instances where this knowledge is not a good policy.

:318 This asymmetric change process requires two commands and the use of an authorization
:319 session.

:320 **End of informative comment**

- :321 1. Changing AuthData for the SRK SHALL involve authorization by the TPM Owner.
:322 2. If SRKAuth is a well known value,
:323 3. TPM_ChangeAuthAsymStart and TPM_ChangeAuthAsymFinish SHOULD be used to
:324 change the AuthData value of a child of the SRK, including the TPM identities.
:325 4. All other entities SHALL involve authorization of the parent entity.

:326 **14. FIPS 140 Physical Protection**

:327 **Start of informative comment**

:328 The FIPS 140-2 program provides assurance that a cryptographic device performs properly.
:329 It is appropriate for TPM vendors to attempt to obtain FIPS 140-2 certification.

:330 The TPM design should be such that the TPM vendor has the opportunity of obtaining FIPS
:331 140-2 certification.

:332 **End of informative comment**

:333 **14.1 TPM Profile for FIPS Certification**

:334 **Start of informative comment**

:335 The FIPS mode of the TPM does require some changes over the normal TPM. These changes
:336 are listed here such that there is a central point of determining the necessary FIPS changes.

:337 **Key creation and use**

:338 TPM_LoadKey, TPM_CMK_CreateKey and TPM_CreateWrapKey changed to disallow the
:339 creation or loading of AUTH_NEVER, legacy and keys less than 1024 bits.
:340 TPM_MakeIdentity changed to disallow AUTH_NEVER.

:341 **End of informative comment**

- :342 1. Each TPM Protected Capability **MUST** be designed such that some profile of the
:343 Capability is capable of obtaining FIPS 140-2 certification

:344 15. Maintenance

:345 **Start of informative comment**

:346 The maintenance feature is a vendor-specific feature, and its implementation is vendor-
:347 specific. The implementation must, however, meet the minimum security requirements so
:348 that implementations of the maintenance feature do not result in security weaknesses.

:349 There is no requirement that the maintenance feature is available, but if it is implemented,
:350 then the requirements must be met.

:351 The maintenance feature described in the specification is an example only, and not the only
:352 mechanism that a manufacturer could implement that meets these requirements.

:353 Maintenance is different from backup/migration, because maintenance provides for the
:354 migration of both migratory and non-migratory data. Maintenance is an optional TPM
:355 function, but if a TPM enables maintenance, the maintenance capabilities in this
:356 specification are mandatory – no other migration capabilities shall be used. Maintenance
:357 necessarily involves the manufacturer of a Subsystem.

:358 When maintaining computer systems, it is sometimes the case that a manufacturer or its
:359 representative needs to replace a Subsystem containing a TPM. Some manufacturers
:360 consider it a requirement that there be a means of doing this replacement without the loss
:361 of the non-migrational keys held by the original TPM.

:362 The owner and users of TCG platforms need assurance that the data within protected
:363 storage is adequately protected against interception by third parties or the manufacturer.

:364 This process **MUST** only be performed between two platforms of the same manufacturer and
:365 model. If the maintenance feature is supported, this section defines the required functions
:366 defined at a high level. The final function definitions and entire maintenance process is left
:367 to the manufacturer to define within the constraints of these high level functions.

:368 Any maintenance process must have certain properties. Specifically, any migration to a
:369 replacement Subsystem must require collaboration between the Owner of the existing
:370 Subsystem and the manufacturer of the existing Subsystem. Further, the procedure must
:371 have adequate safeguards to prevent a non-migrational key being transferred to multiple
:372 Subsystems.

:373 The maintenance capabilities `TPM_CreateMaintenanceArchive` and
:374 `TPM_LoadMaintenanceArchive` enable the transfer of all Protected Storage data from a
:375 Subsystem containing a first TPM (TPM_1) to a Subsystem containing a second TPM (TPM_2):

:376 A manufacturer places a public key in non-volatile storage into its TPMs at manufacture
:377 time.

:378 The Owner of TPM_1 uses `TPM_CreateMaintenanceArchive` to create a maintenance archive
:379 that enables the migration of all data held in Protected Storage by TPM_1 . The Owner of TPM_1
:380 must provide his or her authorization to the Subsystem. The TPM then creates the
:381 `TPM_MIGRATE_ASYMKEY` structure and follows the process defined.

:382 The XOR process prevents the manufacturer from ever obtaining plaintext TPM_1 data.

:383 The additional random data provides a means to assure that a maintenance process cannot
:384 subvert archive data and hide such subversion.

:385 The random mask can be generated by two methods, either using the TPM RNG or MGF1 on
:386 the TPM Owners AuthData.

:387 The manufacturer takes the maintenance blob, decrypts it with its private key, and satisfies
:388 itself that the data bundle represents data from that Subsystem manufactured by that
:389 manufacturer. Then the manufacturer checks the endorsement certificate of TPM₂ and
:390 verifies that it represents a platform to which data from TPM₁ may be moved.

:391 The manufacturer dispatches two messages.

:392 The first message is made available to CAs, and is a revocation of the TPM₁ endorsement
:393 certificate.

:394 The second message is sent to the Owner of TPM₂, which will communicate the SRK,
:395 tpmProof and the manufacturer's permission to install the maintenance blob only on TPM₂

:396 The Owner uses TPM_LoadMaintenanceArchive to install the archive copy into TPM₂, and
:397 overwrite the existing TPM₂-SRK and TPM₂-tpmProof in TPM₂. TPM₂ overwrites TPM₂-SRK
:398 with TPM₁-SRK, and overwrites TPM₂-tpmProof with TPM₁-tpmProof.

:399 Note that the command TPM_KillMaintenanceFeature prevents the operation of
:400 TPM_CreateMaintenanceArchive and TPM_LoadMaintenanceArchive. This enables an Owner
:401 to block maintenance (and hence the migration of non-migratory data) either to or from a
:402 TPM.

:403 It is required that a manufacturer takes steps that prevent further access of migrated data
:404 by TPM₁. This may be achieved by deleting the existing Owner from TPM₁, for example.

:405 For the manufacturer to validate that the maintenance blob is coming from a valid TPM, the
:406 manufacturer can require that a TPM identity sign the maintenance blob. The identity
:407 would be from a CA under the control of the manufacturer and hence the manufacturer
:408 would be satisfied that the blob is from a valid TPM.

End of informative comment

- :410 1. The maintenance feature MUST ensure that the information can be on only one TPM at
:411 a time. Maintenance MUST ensure that at no time the process will expose a shielded
:412 location. Maintenance MUST require the active participation of the Owner.
- :413 2. Any migration of non-migratory data protected by a Subsystem SHALL require the
:414 cooperation of both the Owner of that non-migratory data and the manufacturer of that
:415 Subsystem. That manufacturer SHALL NOT cooperate in a maintenance process unless
:416 the manufacturer is satisfied that non-migratory data will exist in exactly one
:417 Subsystem. A TPM SHALL NOT provide capabilities that support migration of non-
:418 migratory data unless those capabilities are described in the TCG specification.
- :419 3. The maintenance feature MUST move the following
- :420 4. TPM_KEY for SRK. The maintenance process will reset the SRK AuthData to match the
:421 TPM Owners AuthData
- :422 5. TPM_PERMANENT_DATA -> tpmProof
- :423 6. TPM Owner's authorization

:424 15.1 Field Upgrade

Start of informative comment

:426 A TPM, once in the field, may need to update the protected capabilities. This command,
:427 which is optional, provides the mechanism to perform the update.

:428 **End of informative comment**

:429 The TPM SHOULD have provisions for upgrading the subsystem after shipment from the
:430 manufacturer. If provided the mechanism MUST implement the following guidelines:

- :431 1. The upgrade mechanisms in the TPM MUST not require the TPM to hold a global secret.
:432 The definition of global secret is a secret value shared by more than one TPM.
- :433 2. The TPM is not allowed to pre-store or use unique identifiers in the TPM for the purpose
:434 of field upgrade. The TPM MUST NOT use the endorsement key for identification or
:435 encryption in the upgrade process. The upgrade process MAY use a TPM Identity (AIK) to
:436 deliver upgrade information to specific TPM devices.
- :437 3. The upgrade process can only change protected-capabilities.
- :438 4. The upgrade process can only access data in shielded-locations where this data is
:439 necessary to validate the TPM Owner, validate the TPME and manipulate the blob
- :440 5. The TPM MUST conform to the TCG specification, protection profiles and security targets
:441 after the upgrade. The upgrade MAY NOT decrease the security values from the original
:442 security target.
- :443 6. The security target used to evaluate this TPM MUST include this command in the TOE.

:444 16. Proof of Locality

:445 **Start of informative comment**

:446 When a platform is designed with a trusted process, the trusted process may wish to
:447 communicate with the TPM and indicate that the command is coming from the trusted
:448 process. The definition of a trusted process is a platform specific issue.

:449 The commands that the trusted process sends to the TPM are the normal TPM commands
:450 with a modifier that indicates that the trusted process initiated the command. The TPM
:451 accepts the command as coming from the trusted process merely due to the fact that the
:452 modifier is set. The TPM itself is not responsible how the signal is asserted; only that it
:453 honors the assertions The TPM cannot verify the validity of the modifier.

:454 The definition of the modifier is a platform specific issue. Depending on the platform the
:455 modifier could be a special bus cycle or additional input pins on the TPM. The assumption
:456 is that to spoof the modifier to the TPM requires more than just a simple hardware attack
:457 but would require expertise and possibly special hardware. One example would be special
:458 cycles on the LPC bus that inform the TPM it is under the control of a process on the PC
:459 platform.

:460 To allow for multiple mechanisms and for finer grained reporting the TPM will include 4
:461 locality modifiers. These four modifiers allow the platform specific specification to properly
:462 indicate exactly what is occurring and for TPM's to properly respond to locality.

:463 **End of informative comment**

- :464 1. The TPM modifies the receipt of a command and indicates that the trusted process sent
:465 the command when the TPM determines that the modifier is on. The modifier **MUST** only
:466 affect the individual command just received and **MUST NOT** affect any other commands.
:467 However the TPM_ExecuteTransport **MUST** propagate the modifier to the wrapped
:468 command.
- :469 2. A TPM platform specific specification **MAY** indicate the presence of a maximum of 4 local
:470 modifiers. The modifier indication uses the TPM_MODIFIER_INDICATOR structure.
- :471 3. The modifiers may occur singularly or in combination.
- :472 4. The definition of the trusted source is in the platform specific specification.
- :473 5. For ease in reading this specification the indication that the TPM has received any
:474 modifier will be LOCAL_MOD = TRUE.

:475 **17. Monotonic Counter**

:476 **Start of informative comment**

:477 The monotonic counter provides an ever-increasing incremental value. The TPM must
:478 support at least 4 concurrent counters. Implementations inside the TPM may create 4
:479 unique counters or there may be one counter with pointers to keep track of the pointers
:480 current value. A naming convention to allow for unambiguous reference to the various
:481 components the following terms are in use:

:482 Internal Base – This is the main counter. It is in use internally by the TPM and is not
:483 directly accessible by any outside process.

:484 External Counter – A counter in use by external processes. This could be related to the
:485 main counter via pointers and difference values or it could be a totally unique value. The
:486 value of an external counter is not affected by any use, increment or deletion of any other
:487 external counter.

:488 Max Value – The max count value of all counters (internal and external). So if there were 3
:489 external counters having values of 10, 15 and 201 and the internal base having a value of
:490 201 then Max Value is 201. In the same example if the internal base was 502 then Max
:491 Value would be 502.

:492 There are two methods of obtaining an external count, signed or unsigned. The external
:493 counter must allow for 7 years of increments every 5 seconds without causing a hardware
:494 failure. The output of the counter is a 32-bit value.

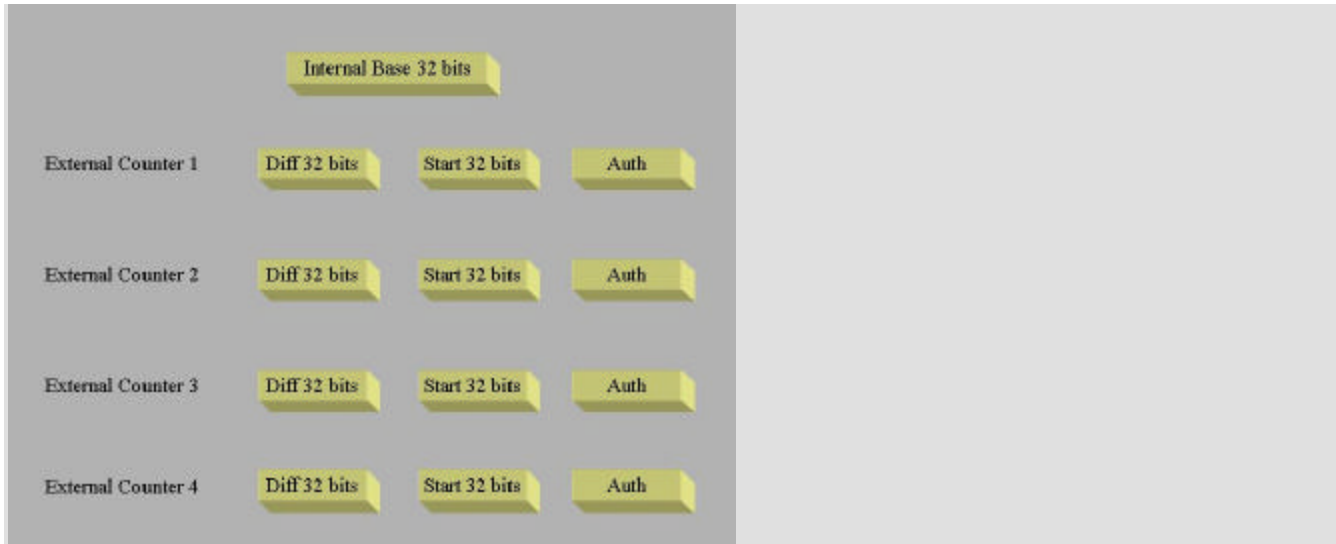
:495 The TPM may create a throttling mechanism that limits the ability to increment an external
:496 counter within a certain time range. The TPM must support an increment rate of once every
:497 5 seconds.

:498 To create an external counter requires TPM Owner authorization. To increment an external
:499 counter the command must pass authorization to use the counter.

:500 External counters can be tagged with a short text string to facilitate counter administration.

:501 Manufacturers are free to implement the monotonic counter using any mechanism.

:502 To illustrate the counters and base the following example is in use. This mechanism uses
:503 two saving values (diff and start), however this is only an example and not meant to indicate
:504 any specific implementation.



:505

:506 The internal base (IB) always moves forward and can never be reset. IB drives all external
:507 counters on the machine..

:508 The purpose of the following example is to show the two external counters always moving
:509 forward independent of the other and how the IB moves forward also.

:510 Starting condition is that IB is at 22 and no other external counters are active.

:511 Start external counter A

:512 Increment IB (set new Max Value) IB = 23

:513 Assign start value of A to 23 (or Max Value)

:514 Assign difference of A to 23 (we always start at current value of IB)

:515 Assign a handle for A

:516 Increment A 5 times

:517 IB is now 28

:518 Request current A value

:519 Return $28 = 28 \text{ (IB)} + 23 \text{ (difference)} - 23 \text{ (start value)}$

:520 Counter A has gone from the start of 23 to 28 incremented 5 times.

:521 TPM_Startup(ST_CLEAR)

:522 Start Counter B

:523 Save A difference $28 = 23 \text{ (old difference)} + 28 \text{ (IB)} - 23 \text{ (start value)}$

:524 Increment IB (set new Max Value) IB = 29

:525 Set start value of B to 29 (or Max Value)

:526 Assign difference of B to 29

:527 Assign handle for B

:528 Increment B 8 times

:529 IB is now 37

:530 Request B value

:531 Return $37 = 37 \text{ (IB)} + 29 \text{ (difference)} - 29 \text{ (start value)}$

:532 TPM_Startup(ST_CLEAR)

:533 Increment A

:534 Store B difference (37)

:535 Load A start value of 37

:536 Increment IB to 38

:537 Return A value

:538 Return $29 = 38 \text{ (IB)} + 28 \text{ (difference)} - 37 \text{ (start value)}$

:539

:540 Notice that A has gone from 28 to 29 which is correct, while B is at 37. Depending on the

:541 order of increments A may pass B or it may always be less than B.

:542 **End of informative comment**

:543 1. The counter MUST be designed to not wear out in the first 7 years of operation. The

:544 counter MUST be able to increment at least once every 5 seconds. The TPM, in response

:545 to operations that would violate these counter requirements, MAY throttle the counter

:546 usage (cause a delay in the use of the counter) or return the error

:547 TPM_E_COUNTERUSAGE.

:548 2. The TPM MUST support at least 4 concurrent counters.

:549 3. The establishment of a new counter MUST prevent the reuse of any previous counter

:550 value. I.E. if the TPM has 3 counters and the max value of a current counter is at 36

:551 then the establishment of a new counter would start at 37.

:552 4. After a successful TPM_Startup(ST_CLEAR) the first successful TPM_IncrementCounter

:553 sets the counter handle. Any attempt to issue TPM_IncrementCounter with a different

:554 handle MUST fail.

:555 5. TPM_CreateCounter does NOT set the counter handle.

:556 **18. Transport Protection**

:557 **Start of informative comment**

:558 The creation of sessions allows for the grouping of a set of commands into a session. The
:559 session provides a log of all commands and can provide confidentiality of the commands
:560 using the session.

:561 Session establishment creates a shared secret and then uses the shared secret to authorize
:562 and protect commands sent to the TPM using the session.

:563 After establishing the session, the caller uses the session to wrap a command to execute.
:564 The user of the transport session can wrap any command except for commands that would
:565 create nested transport sessions.

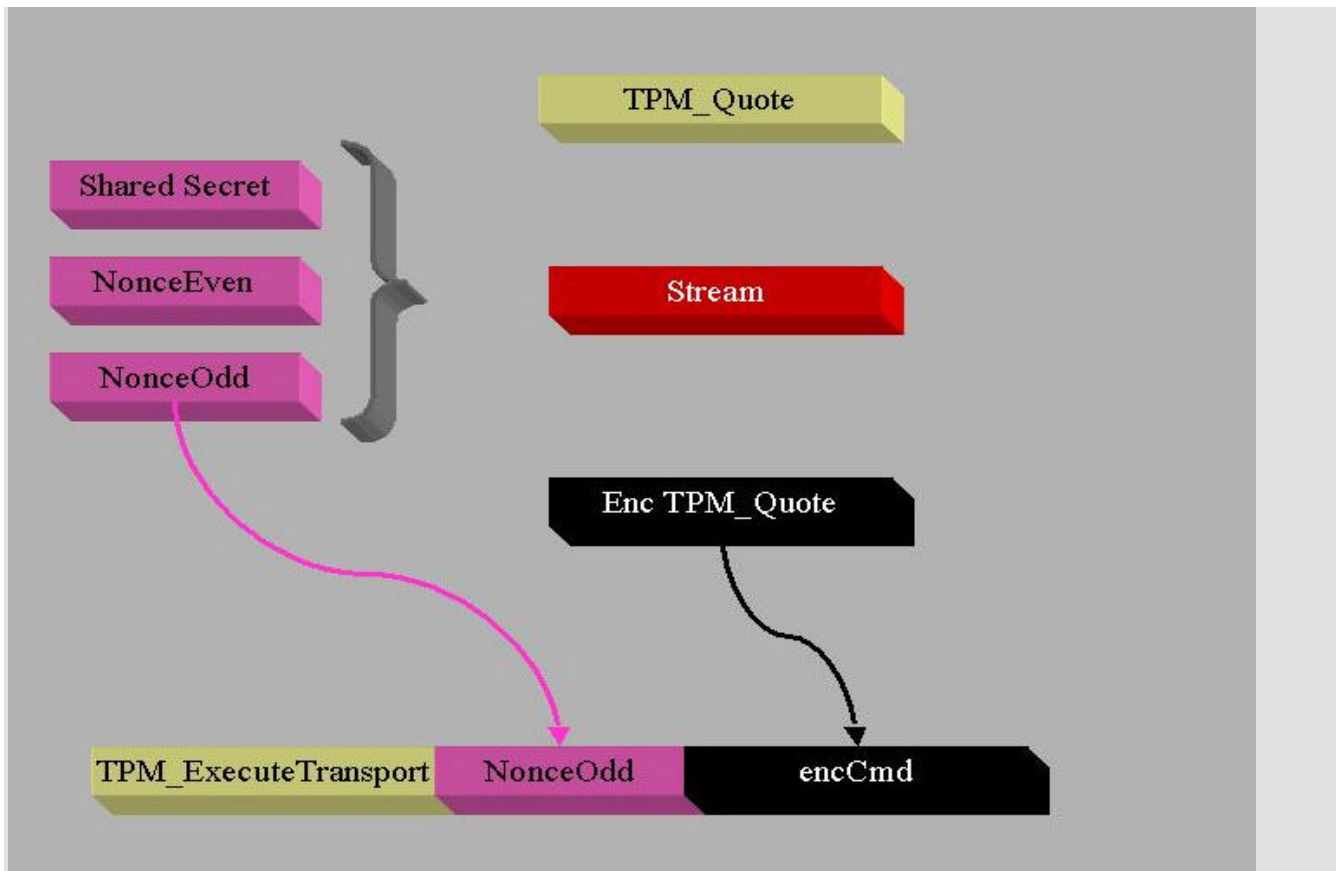
:566 The log of executed commands uses a structure that includes the parameters and current
:567 tick count. The session log provides a record of each command using the session.

:568 The transport session uses the same rolling nonce protocol that authorization sessions use.
:569 This protocol defines two nonces for each command sent to the TPM; nonceOdd provided by
:570 the caller and nonceEven generated by the TPM.

:571 For confidentiality, the caller can use the MGF1 function to create an XOR string the same
:572 size as the command to execute. The inputs to the MGF1 function are the shared secret,
:573 nonceOdd and nonceEven. A symmetric key encryption algorithm can also be specified.

:574 There is no explicit close session as the caller can use the continueSession flag set to false
:575 to end a session. The caller can also call the sign session log, which also ends the session. If
:576 the caller loses track of which sessions are active the caller should use the flush
:577 commands to regain control of the TPM resources.

:578 For an attacker to successfully break the encryption the attacker must be able to determine
:579 from a few bits what an entire SHA-1 output was. This is equivalent to breaking SHA-1. The
:580 reason that the attacker will know some bits is that the commands are in a known format.
:581 This then allows the attacker to determine what the XOR bits were. Knowledge of 159 bits of
:582 the XOR stream does not provide any greater than 50% probability of knowing the 160th bit.



:583

:584 This picture shows the protection of a TPM_Quote command. Previously executed was
 :585 session establishment. The nonces in use for the TPM_Quote have no relationship with the
 :586 nonces that are in use for the TPM_ExecuteTransport command.

:587 **End of informative comment**

- :588 1. The TPM MUST support a minimum of one transport session.
- :589 2. The TPM MUST NOT support the nesting of transport sessions. The definition of nesting
 :590 is attempting to execute a wrapped command that is a transport session command. So
 :591 for example when executing TPM_ExecuteTransport the wrapped command MUST not be
 :592 TPM_ExecuteTransport.
- :593 3. The TPM MUST ensure that if transport logging is active that the inclusion of the tick
 :594 count in the session log does not provide information that would make a timing attack
 :595 on the operations using the session more successful.
- :596 4. The transport session MAY be exclusive. Any command executed outside of the exclusive
 :597 transport session MUST cause the invalidation of the exclusive transport session.
- :598 a. The TPM_ExecuteTransport command specifying the exclusive transport session is
 :599 the only command that does not terminate the exclusive session.
- :600 5. It MAY be ineffective to wrap TPM_SaveState in a transport session. Since the TPM MAY
 :601 include transport sessions in the saved state, the saved state MAY be invalidated by the
 :602 wrapping TPM_ExecuteTransport.

:603 **18.1 Transport encryption and authorization**

:604 **Start of informative comment**

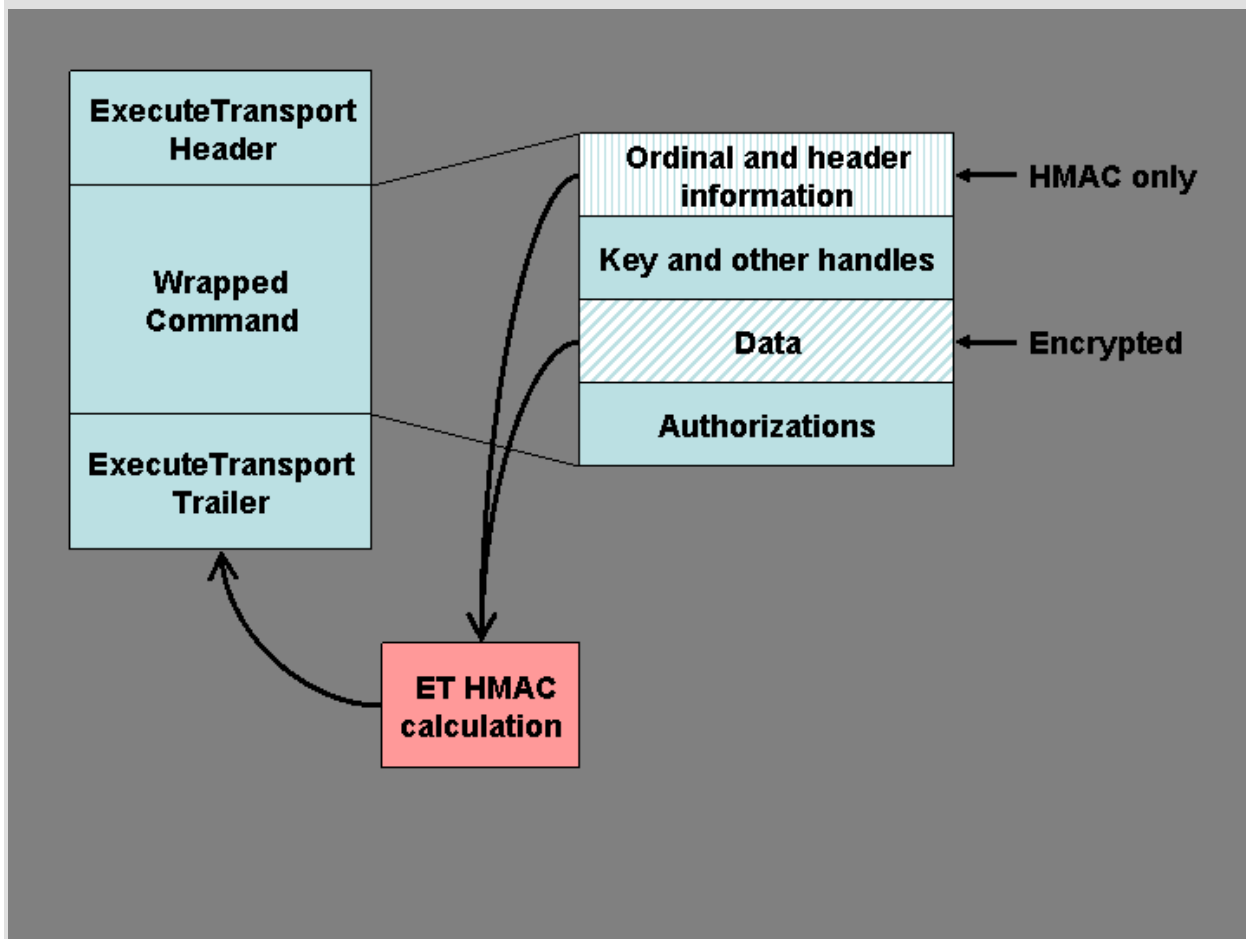
:605 The confidentiality of the transport protection is provided by a encrypting the wrapped
:606 command. Encryption of various items in the wrapped command makes resource
:607 management of a TPM impossible. For this reason, encryption of the entire command is not
:608 possible. In addition to the encryption issue, there are difficulties with creating the HMAC
:609 for the TPM_ExecuteTransport authorization.

:610 The solution to these problems is to provide limited encryption and HMAC information.

:611 The HMAC will only include two areas from the wrapped command, the command header
:612 information up to the handles, and the data after the handles. The format of all TPM
:613 commands is such that all handles are in the data stream prior to the payload or data. After
:614 the data comes the authorization information. To enable resource management, the HMAC
:615 for TPM_ExecuteTransport only includes the ordinal, header information and the data. The
:616 HMAC does not include handles and the authorization handles and nonces.

:617 The exception is TPM_OwnerReadInternalPub, which uses fixed value key handles that are
:618 included in the encryption and HMAC calculation.

:619



:620

:621 A more exact representation of the execute transport command would be the following

```
'622 *****
'623 * TAGet | LENet | ORDet | wrappedCmd | AUTHet *
'624 *****
```

'625 wrappedCmd looks like

```
'627 *****
'628 * TAGw | LENw | ORDw | HANDLESw | DATAw | AUTH1w (o) | AUTH2w (o) *
'629 *****
```

'630 A more exact representation of the execute transport response would be the following

```
'631 *****
'632 * TAGet | LENet | RCet | wrappedRsp | AUTHet *
'633 *****
```

'634 wrappedRsp looks like

```
'636 *****
'637 * TAGw | LENw | RCw | HANDLESw | DATAw | AUTH1w (o) | AUTH2w (o) *
'638 *****
```

'639 The calculation for AUTHet takes as the data component of the HMAC calculation the concatenation of ORDw and DATAw. A normal HMAC calculation would have taken the entire wrappedCmd value but for the executeTransport calculation only the above two values are active. This does require the executeTransport command to parse the wrappedCmd to find the appropriate values.

'645 The data for the command HMAC calculation is the following:

'646 $H1 = \text{SHA-1}(\text{ORDw} || \text{DATAw})$

'647 $\text{inParamDigest} = \text{SHA-1}(\text{ORDet} || \text{wrappedCmdSize} || H1)$

'648 $\text{AUTHet} = \text{HMAC}(\text{inParamDigest} || \text{lastNonceEven(et)} || \text{nonceOdd(et)} || \text{continue(et)})$

'649 The data for the response HMAC calculation is the following:

'650 $H2 = \text{SHA-1}(\text{RCw} || \text{ORDw} || \text{DATAw})$

'651 $\text{outParamDigest} = \text{SHA-1}(\text{RCet} || \text{ORDet} || \text{currentTicks} || \text{locality} || \text{wrappedRspSize} || H1)$

'653 $\text{AUTHet} = \text{HMAC}(\text{outParamDigest} || \text{nonceEven(et)} || \text{nonceOdd(et)} || \text{continue(et)})$

'654 DATAw is the unencrypted data. wrappedCmdSize and wrappedRspSize are the actual size of the DATAw area and not the size of H1 or H2.

'656 **End of informative comment**

'657 The TPM MUST release a transport session and all information related to the session when:

- '658 1. TPM_ReleaseTransportSigned is executed
- '659 2. TPM_ExecuteTransport is executed with continueTransSession set to FALSE
- '660 3. Any failure of the integrity check during execution of TPM_ExecuteTransport
- '661 4. If the session has TPM_TRANSPORT_LOG set and the TPM tick session is interrupted for
- '662 any reason. This is due to the return of tick values without the nonces associated with
- '663 the session.

'664 5. The TPM executes some command that deactivates the TPM or removes the TPM Owner
'665 or EK.

'666 **18.1.1 MGF1 parameters**

'667 **Start of informative comment**

'668 MGF1 provides the confidentiality for the transport session. MGF1 is a function from PKCS
'669 1 version 2.0. This function provides a mechanism to distribute entropy over a large
'670 sequence. The sequence provides a value to XOR over the message. This in effect creates a
'671 stream cipher but not one that is available for bulk encryption.

'672 Transport confidentiality uses MGF1 as a stream cipher and obtains the entropy for each
'673 message from the following three parameters; nonceOdd, nonceEven and session authData.

'674 It is imperative that the stream cipher not use the same XOR sequence at any time. The
'675 following illustrates how the sequence changes for each message (both input and output).

'676 M1Input – N2, N1, sessionSecret)

'677 M1Output – N4, N1, sessionSecret)

'678 M2Input – N4, N3, sessionSecret)

'679 M2Output – N6, N3, sessionSecret)

'680 There is an issue with this sequence. If the caller does not change N1 to N3 between
'681 M1Output and M2Input then the same sequence will be generated. The TPM does not
'682 enforce the requirement to change this value so it is possible to leak information.

'683 The fix for this is to add one more parameter, the direction. So the sequence is now this:

'684 M1Input – N2, N1, “in”, sessionSecret)

'685 M1Output – N4, N1, “out”, sessionSecret)

'686 M2Input – N4, N3, “in”, sessionSecret)

'687 M2Output – N6, N3, “out”, sessionSecret)

'688 Where “in” indicates the in direction and “out” indicates the out direction.

'689 Notice the calculation for M1Output uses “out” and M2Input uses “in”, so if the caller
'690 makes a mistake and does not change nonceOdd, the sequence will still be different.

'691 nonceEven is under control of the TPM and is always changing, so there is no need to worry
'692 about nonceEven not changing.

'693 **End of informative comment**

'694 **18.1.2 HMAC calculation**

'695 **Start of informative comment**

'696 The HMAC calculation for transports presents some issues with what should and should
'697 not be in the calculation. The idea is to create a calculation for the wrapped command and
'698 add that to the wrapper.

'699 So the data area for a wrapped command is not entirely HMAC'd like a normal command
'700 would be.

:701 The process is to calculate the inParamDigest of the unencrypted wrapped command
:702 according to the normal rules of command HMAC calculations. Then use that value as the
:703 3S parameter in the calculation. 2S is the actual wrapped command size, and not the size
:704 of inParamDigest.

:705 Example using a wrapped TPM_LoadKey command

:706 Calculate the SHA-1 value for the TPM_LoadKey command (ordinal and data) as per the
:707 normal HMAC rules. Take the digest and use that value as 3S for the
:708 TPM_ExecuteTransport HMAC calculation.

:709 **End of informative comment**

:710 **18.1.3 Transport log creation**

:711 **Start of informative comment**

:712 The log of information that a transport session creates needs a mechanism to tie any keys
:713 in use during the session to the session. As the HMAC and encryption for the command
:714 specifically exclude handles, there is no direct way to create the binding.

:715 When creating the input log, if a handle points to a key, the hash of the public key is added
:716 to the log. The session owner knows the value of any keys in use and hence can still create
:717 a log that shows the values used by the log and can validate the session.

:718 When creating the transport input log, if there is one input key, the TPM will create a hash
:719 of the public key. If there are two input keys, the TPM will create a hash of each public key,
:720 concatenate the hashes, and create a hash of the result. The result, along with the
:721 parameter digest, is used to extend that transport log.

:722 **End of informative comment**

:723 **18.1.4 Additional Encryption Mechanisms**

:724 **Start of informative comment**

:725 The TPM can optionally implement alternate algorithms for the encryption of commands
:726 sent to the TPM_ExecuteTransport command. The designation of the algorithm uses the
:727 TPM_ALGORITHM_ID element of the TPM_TRANSPORT_PUBLIC parameter of
:728 TPM_EstablishTransport command.

:729 The anticipation is that AES and 3DES will be available algorithms supported by various
:730 TPM's. Symmetric algorithms have options available to them like key size, block size and
:731 operating mode. When using an algorithm other than MGF1 the algorithm must specify
:732 these options.

:733 **End of informative comment**

:734 1. The TPM MAY support other symmetric algorithms for the confidentiality requirement in
:735 TPM_EstablishTransport

:736 **18.2 Transport Error Handling**

:737 **Start of informative comment**

:738 With the transport hiding the actual execution of commands and the transport capable of
:739 generating errors, rules must be established to allow for the errors and the results of
:740 commands to be properly passed to TPM callers.

:741 **End of informative comment**

- :742 1. There are 3 error cases:
- :743 2. C1 is the case where an error occurs during the processing of the transport package at
:744 the TPM. In this case, the wrapped command has not been sent to the command
:745 decoder. Errors occurring during C1 are sent back to the caller as a response to the
:746 TPM_ExecuteTransport command. The error response does not have confidentiality.
- :747 3. C2 is the case where an error occurs during the processing of the wrapped command.
:748 This results in an error response from the command. The session returns the error
:749 response according to the attributes of the session.
- :750 4. C3 is the case where an error occurs after the wrapped command has completed
:751 processing and the TPM is preparing the response to the TPM_ExecuteTransport
:752 command. In this case, where the TPM does have an internal error, the TPM has no
:753 choice but to return the error as in C1. This however hides the results of the wrapped
:754 command. If the wrapped command completed successfully then there are session
:755 nonces that are being returned to the caller that are lost. The loss of these nonces
:756 causes the caller to be unsure of the state of the TPM and requires the reestablishment
:757 of sessions and keys.

:758 **18.3 Exclusive Transport Sessions**

:759 **Start of informative comment**

:760 The caller may establish an exclusive session with the TPM. When an exclusive session is
:761 running, execution of any command other than TPM_ExecuteTransport or
:762 TPM_ReleaseTransportSigned targeting the exclusive session causes the abnormal
:763 invalidation of the exclusive transport session. Invalidation means that the handle is no
:764 longer valid and all subsequent attempts to use the handle return an error.

:765 The design for the exclusive session provides an assurance that no other command
:766 executed on the TPM. It is not a lock to prevent other operations from occurring. Therefore,
:767 the caller is responsible for ensuring no interruption of the sequence of commands using
:768 the TPM.

:769 **One exclusive session**

:770 The TPM only supports one exclusive session at a time. There is no nesting or other
:771 commands possible. The TPM maintains an internal flag that indicates the existence of an
:772 exclusive session.

:773 **TSS responsibilities**

:774 It is the responsibility of the TSS (or other controlling software) to ensure that only
:775 commands using the session reach the TPM. As the purpose of the session is to show that
:776 nothing else occurred on the TPM during the session, the TSS should control access to the
:777 TPM and prevent any other uses of the TPM. The TSS design must take into account the
:778 possibility of exclusive session handle invalidation.

:779 **Sleep states**

:780 Exclusive sessions as defined here do not work across TPM_SaveState and
 :781 TPM_Startup(ST_STATE) invocations. To have this sequence work properly there would
 :782 need to be exceptions to allowing only TPM_ExecuteTransport and
 :783 TPM_ReleaseTransportSigned in an exclusive session. The requirement for these exceptions
 :784 would come from the attempt of the TSS to understand the current state of the TPM.
 :785 Commands like TPM_GetCapability and others would have to execute to inform the TSS as
 :786 to the internal state of the TPM. For this reason, there are no exceptions to the rule and the
 :787 exclusive session does not remain active across a TPM_SaveState command.

:788 **End of informative comment**

- :789 1. The TPM MUST support only one exclusive transport session
- :790 2. The TPM MUST invalidate the exclusive transport session upon the receipt of any
 :791 command other than TPM_ExecuteTransport or TPM_ReleaseTransportSigned targeting
 :792 the exclusive session.
- :793 a. Invalidation includes the release of any resources assigned to the session

:794 **18.4 Transport Audit Handling**

:795 **Start of informative comment**

:796 Auditing of TPM_ExecuteTransport occurs as any other command that may require
 :797 auditing. There are two entries in the log, one for input one for output. The execution of the
 :798 wrapped command can create an anomaly in the log.

:799 Assume that both TPM_ExecuteTransport and the wrapped commands require auditing, the
 :800 audit flow would look like the following:

- :801 TPM_ExecuteTransport input parameters
- :802 wrapped command input parameters
- :803 wrapped command output parameters
- :804 TPM_ExecuteTransport output parameters

:805 **End of informative comment**

- :806 1. Audit failures are reported using the AUTHFAIL error commands and reflect the success
 :807 or failure of the wrapped command.

:808 **18.4.1 Auditing of wrapped commands**

:809 **Start of informative comment**

:810 Auditing provides information to allow an auditor to recreate the operations performed.
 :811 Confidentiality on the transport channel is to hide what operations occur. These two
 :812 features are in conflict. According to the TPM design philosophy, the TPM Owner takes
 :813 precedence.

:814 For a command sent on a transport session, with the session using confidentiality and the
 :815 command requiring auditing, the TPM will execute the command however the input and
 :816 output parameters for the command are set to NULL.

:817 **End of informative comment**

- '818 1. When the wrapped command requires auditing and the transport session specifies
'819 encryption, the TPM MUST perform the audit. However, when computing the audit
'820 digest:
- '821 a. For input, only the ordinal is audited.
 - '822 b. For output, only the ordinal and return code are audited.

:823 19. Audit Commands

:824 **Start of informative comment**

:825 To allow the TPM Owner the ability to determine that certain operations on the TPM have
:826 been executed, auditing of commands is possible. The audit value is a digest held internally
:827 to the TPM and externally as a log of all audited commands. With the log held externally to
:828 the TPM, the internal digest must allow the log auditor to determine the presence of attacks
:829 against the log. The evidence of tampering may not provide evidence of the type of attack
:830 mounted against the log.

:831 The TPM cannot enforce any protections on the external log. It is the responsibility of the
:832 external log owner to properly maintain and protect the log.

:833 The TPM provides mechanisms for the external log maintainer to resynchronize the internal
:834 digest and external logs.

:835 The Owner has the ability to set which functions generate an audit event and to change
:836 which functions generate the event at any time.

:837 The status of the audit generation is not sensitive information and so the command to
:838 determine the status of the audit generation is not an owner authorized command.

:839 It is important to note the difference between auditing and the logging of transport sessions.
:840 The audit log provides information on the execution of specific commands. There will be a
:841 very limited number of audited commands, most likely those commands that provide
:842 identities and control of the TPM. Commands such as TPM_Unseal would not be audited.
:843 They would use the logging functions of a transport session.

:844 The auditing of an ordinal happens in a two-step process. The first step involves auditing
:845 the receipt of the command and the input parameters; the second step involves auditing the
:846 response to the command and the output parameters. This two-step process is in place to
:847 lower the amount of memory necessary to keep track of the audit while executing the
:848 command. This two-step process makes no memory requirements on a TPM to save any
:849 audit information while a command is executing.

:850 There is a requirement to enable verification of the external audit log both during a power
:851 session and across power sessions and to enable detection of partial or inconsistent audit
:852 logs throughout the lifetime of a TPM.

:853 A TPM will hold an internal record consisting of a non-volatile counter (that increments
:854 once per session, when the first audit event of that session occurs) and a digest (that holds
:855 the digest of the current session). Most probably, the audit digest will be volatile. Note,
:856 however, that nothing in this specification prevents the use of a non-volatile audit digest.
:857 This arrangement of counter and digest is advantageous because it is easier to build a high
:858 endurance non-volatile counter than a high endurance non-volatile digest. This
:859 arrangement is insufficient, however, because the truncation of an audit log of any session
:860 is possible without trace. It is therefore necessary to perform an explicit close on the audit
:861 session. If there is no record of a close-audit event in an audit session, anything could have
:862 happened after the last audit event in the audit log. The essence of a typical TPM audit
:863 recording mechanism is therefore:

:864 The TPM contains a volatile digest used like a PCR, where the “integrity metrics” are digests
:865 of command parameters in the current audit session.

:866 An audit session opens when the volatile “PCR” digest is “extended” from its NULL state.
:867 This occurs whenever an audited command is executed AND no audit session currently
:868 exists, and in no other circumstances. When an audit session opens, a non-volatile counter
:869 is automatically incremented.

:870 An audit session closes when a TPM receives TPM_GetAuditDigestSigned with a closeAudit
:871 parameter asserted. An audit session must be considered closed if the value in the volatile
:872 digest is invalid (for whatever reason).

:873 TPM_GetCapability should report the effect of TPM_Startup on the volatile digest. (TPMs
:874 may initialize the volatile digest on the first audit command after TPM_Startup(ST_CLEAR),
:875 or on the first audit command after any version of TPM_Startup, or may be independent of
:876 TPM_Startup.)

:877 When the TPM signs its audit digest, it signs the concatenation of the non-volatile counter
:878 and the volatile digest, and exports the value of the non-volatile counter, plus the value of
:879 the volatile digest, plus the value of the signature.

:880 If the audit digest is initialized by TPM_Startup(ST_STATE), then it may be useless to audit
:881 the TPM_SaveState ordinal. Any command after TPM_SaveState MAY invalidate the saved
:882 state. If authorization sessions are part of the saved state, TPM_GetAuditDigestSigned will
:883 most likely invalidate the state as it changes the preserved authorization session nonce. It
:884 may therefore be impossible to get the audit results.

:885 The system designer needs to ensure that the selected TPM can handle the specific
:886 environment and avoid burnout of the audit monotonic counter.

:887 **End of informative comment**

- :888 1. Audit functionality is optional
- :889 a. If the platform specific specification requires auditing, the specification SHALL
:890 indicate how the TPM implements audit
- :891 2. The TPM MUST maintain an audit monotonic count that is only available for audit
:892 purposes.
- :893 a. The increment of this audit counter is under the sole control of the TPM and is not
:894 usable for other count purposes.
- :895 b. This monotonic count MUST BE incremented by one whenever the audit digest is
:896 “extended” from a NULL state.
- :897 3. The TPM MUST maintain an audit digest.
- :898 a. This digest MUST be set to NULL upon the execution of TPM_GetAuditDigestSigned
:899 with a TRUE value of closeAudit provided that the signing key is an identity key.
- :900 b. This digest MAY be set to NULL on TPM_Startup[ST_CLEAR] or
:901 TPM_Startup[ST_STATE].
- :902 c. When an audited command is executed, this register MUST be extended with the
:903 digest of that command.
- :904 4. Each command ordinal has an indicator in non-volatile TPM memory that indicates if
:905 execution of the command will generate an audit event. The setting of the ordinal
:906 indicator MUST be under control of the TPM Owner.

:907 5. Updating of auditDigest MAY cease when TPM_STCLEAR_FLAGS -> deactivated is TRUE.
:908 This is because a deactivated TPM performs no useful service until the
:909 TPM_Startup(ST_CLEAR), at which point TPM_STCLEAR_FLAGS -> deactivated is
:910 reinitialized.

:911 **19.1 Audit Monotonic Counter**

:912 **Start of informative comment**

:913 The audit monotonic counter (AMC) performs the task of sequencing audit logs across audit
:914 sessions. The AMC must have no other uses other than the audit log.

:915 The TPM and platform should be matched such that the expected AMC endurance matches
:916 the expected platform audit sessions and sleep cycles.

:917 Given the size of the AMC it is not anticipated that the AMC would roll over. If the AMC
:918 were to roll over, and the storage of the AMC still allowed updates, the AMC could cycle and
:919 start at 0 again.

:920 **End of informative comment**

- :921 1. The AMC is a TPM_COUNTER_VALUE.
- :922 2. The AMC MUST last for 7 years or at least 1,000,000 audit sessions, whichever occurs
:923 first. After this amount of usage, there is no guarantee that the TPM will continue to
:924 properly increment the monotonic counter.

:925 **20. Design Section on Time Stamping**

:926 **Start of informative comment**

:927 The TPM provides a service to apply a time stamp to various blobs. The time stamp provided
:928 by the TPM is not an actual universal time clock (UTC) value but is the number of timer
:929 ticks the TPM has counted. It is the responsibility of the caller to associate the ticks to an
:930 actual UTC time.

:931 The TPM counts ticks from the start of a timing session. Timing sessions are platform
:932 dependent events that may or may not coincide with TPM_Init and TPM_Startup sessions.
:933 The reason for this difference is the availability of power to the TPM. In a PC desktop, for
:934 instance power could be continually available to the TPM by using power from the wall
:935 socket. For a PC mobile platform, power may not be available when only using the internal
:936 battery. It is a platform designer's decision as to when and how they supply power to the
:937 TPM to maintain the timing ticks.

:938 The TPM can provide a time stamping service. The TPM does not maintain an internal
:939 secure source of time rather the TPM maintains a count of the number of ticks that have
:940 occurred since the start of a timing session.

:941 On a PC, the TPM may use the timing source of the LPC bus or it may have a separate clock
:942 circuit. The anticipation is that availability of the TPM timing ticks and the tick resolution is
:943 an area of differentiation available to TPM manufactures and platform providers.

:944 **End of informative comment**

- :945 1. This specification makes no requirement on the mechanism required to implement the
:946 tick counter in the TPM.
- :947 2. This specification makes no requirement on the ability for the TPM to maintain the
:948 ability to increment the tick counter across power cycles or in different power modes on
:949 a platform.

:950 **20.1 Tick Components**

:951 **Start of informative comment**

:952 The TPM maintains for each tick session the following values:

:953 Tick Count Value (TCV) – The count of ticks for the session.

:954 Tick Increment Rate (TIR) – The rate at which the TCV is incremented. There is a set
:955 relationship between TIR and seconds, the relationship is set during manufacturing of the
:956 TPM and platform. This is the TPM_CURRENT_TICKS -> tickRate parameter.

:957 Tick Session Nonce (TSN) – The session nonce is set at the start of each tick session.

:958 **End of informative comment**

- :959 1. The TCV MUST be set to 0 at the start of each tick session. The TPM MUST start a new
:960 tick session if the TPM loses the ability to increment the TCV according to the TIR.
- :961 2. The TSN MUST be set to the next value from the TPM RNG at the start of each new tick
:962 session. When the TPM loses the ability to increment the TCV according to the TIR the
:963 TSN MUST be set to NULLS.

- :964 3. If the TPM discovers tampering with the tick count (through timing changes etc) the TPM
 :965 MUST treat this as an attack and shut down further TPM processing as if a self-test had
 :966 failed.

:967 **20.2 Basic Tick Stamp**

:968 **Start of informative comment**

:969 The TPM does not provide a secure time source, nor does it provide a signature over some
 :970 time value. The TPM does provide a signature over some current tick counter. The signature
 :971 covers a hash of the blob to stamp, the current counter value, the tick session nonce and
 :972 some fixed text.

:973 The Tick Stamp Result (TSR) is the result of the tick stamp operation that associates the
 :974 TCV, TSN and the blob. There is no association with the TCV or TSR with any UTC value at
 :975 this point.

:976 **End of informative comment**

:977 **20.3 Associating a TCV with UTC**

:978 **Start of informative comment**

:979 An outside observer would like to associate a TCV with a relevant time value. The following
 :980 shows how to accomplish this task. This protocol is not required but shows how to
 :981 accomplish the job.

:982 EntityA wants to have BlobA time stamped. EntityA performs TPM_TickStamp on BlobA.
 :983 This creates TSRB (TickStampResult for Blob). TSRB records TSRBTCV, the current value of
 :984 the TCV, and associates TSRBTCV with the TSN.

:985 Now EntityA needs to associate a TCV with a real time value. EntityA creates blob TS which
 :986 contains some known text like "Tick Stamp". EntityA performs TPM_TickStamp on blob TS
 :987 creating TSR1. This records TSR1TCV, the current value of the TCV, and associates
 :988 TSR1TCV with the TSN.

:989 EntityA sends TSR1 to a Time Authority (TA). TA creates TA1 which associates TSR1 with
 :990 UTC1.

:991 EntityA now performs TPM_TickStamp on TA1. This creates TSR2. TSR2 records TSR2TCV,
 :992 the current values of the TCV, and associates TSR2TCV with the TSN.

:993 **Analyzing the associations**

:994 EntityA has three TSR's; TSRB the TSR of the blob that we wanted to time stamp, TSR1 the
 :995 TSR associated with the TS blob and TSR2 the TSR associated with the information from
 :996 the TA. EntityA wants to show an association between the various TSR such that there is a
 :997 connection between the UTC and BlobA.

:998 From TSR1 EntityA knows that TSR1TCV is less than the UTC. This is true since the TA is
 :999 signing TSR1 and the creation of TSR1 has to occur before the signature of TSR1. Stated
 :000 mathematically:

$$:001 \quad \text{TSR1TCV} < \text{UTC1}$$

:002 From TSR2 EntityA knows that TSR2TCV is greater than the UTC. This is true since the
 :003 TPM is signing TA1 which must be created before it was signed. Stated mathematically:

:004 $TSR2TCV > UTC1$

:005 EntityA now knows $TSR1TCV$ and $TSR2TCV$ bound $UTC1$. Stated mathematically:

:006 $TSR1TCV < UTC1 < TSR2TCV$

:007 This association holds true if the TSN for $TSR1$ matches the TSN for $TSR2$. If some event
:008 occurs that causes the TPM to create a new TSN and restart the TCV then EntityA must
:009 start the process all over again.

:010 EntityA does not know when $UTC1$ occurred in the interval between $TSR1TCV$ and
:011 $TSR2TCV$. In fact, the value $TSR2TCV$ minus $TSR1TCV$ ($TSRDELTA$) is the amount of
:012 uncertainty to which a TCV value should be associated with $UTC1$. Stated mathematically:

:013 $TSRDELTA = TSR2TCV - TSR1TCV$ iff $TSR1TSN = TSR2TSN$

:014 EntityA can obtain $k1$ the relationship between ticks and seconds using the
:015 $TPM_GetCapability$ command. EntityA also obtains $k2$ the possible errors per tick. EntityA
:016 now calculate $DeltaTime$ which is the conversion of ticks to seconds and the $TSRDELTA$.
:017 State mathematically:

:018 $DeltaTime = (k1 * TSRDELTA) + (k2 * TSRDELTA)$

:019

:020 To make the association between $DeltaTime$, UTC and $TSRB$ note the following:

:021 $DeltaTime = (k1*TSRDelta) + Drift = TimeChange + Drift$

:022 Where $ABSOLUTEVALUE(Drift) < k2*TSRDelta$

:023 (1) $TSR1TCV < UTC1 < TSR2TCV$

:024 True since you cannot sign something before it exists

:025 (2) $TSR1TCV < UTC1 < TSR1TCV + TSR2TCV - TSR1TCV \leq TSR1TCV + DeltaTime (=$
:026 $TSR1TCV + TimeChange + Drift)$

:027 True because $TSR1$ and $TSR2$ are in the same tick session proved by the same TSN. (Note
:028 $TimeChange$ is positive!)

:029 (3) $0 < UTC1 - TSR1TCV < DeltaTime$

:030 (Subtract $TSR1TCV$ from all sides)

:031 (4) $0 > TSR1TCV - UTC1 > -DeltaTime = -TimeChange - Drift$

:032 (Multiply through by -1)

:033 (5) $TimeChange/2 > [TSR1TCV - (UTC1 - TimeChange/2)] > -TimeChange/2 - Drift$

:034 (add $TimeChange/2$ to all sides)

:035 (6) $TimeChange/2 + ABSOLUTEVALUE(Drift) > [TSR1TCV - (UTC1 - TimeChange/2)]$
:036 $> -TimeChange/2 - ABSOLUTEVALUE(Drift)$

:037 Making the large side of an equality bigger, and potentially making the small side smaller.

:038 (7) $ABSOLUTEVALUE[TSR1TCV - (UTC1 - TimeChange/2)] < TimeChange/2 +$
:039 $ABSOLUTEVALUE(Drift)$

:040 (Definition of Absolute Value, and $TimeChange$ is positive)

:041

:042 From which we see that $TSR1TCV$ is approximately $UTC1 - TimeChange/2$ with a symmetric
:043 possible error of $TimeChange/2 + AbsoluteValue(Drift)$

:044 We can calculate this error as being less than $k1 * TSRDelta/2 + k2 * TSRDelta$.

:045

:046 EntityA now has the ability to associate $UTC1$ with $TSBTSV$ and by allow others to know
:047 that $BlobA$ was signed at a certain time. First $TSBTSN$ must equal $TSR1TSN$. This
:048 relationship allows EntityA to assert that $TSRB$ occurs during the same session as $TSR1$
:049 and $TSR2$.

:050 EntityA calculates $HashTimeDelta$ which is the difference between $TSR1TCV$ and $TSRBTCV$
:051 and the conversion of ticks to seconds. $HashTimeDelta$ includes the same $k1$ and $k2$ as
:052 calculated above. Stated mathematically:

:053
$$E = k2(TSR1TCV - TSRBTCV)$$

:054
$$HashTimeDelta = k1(TSR1TCV - TSRBTCV) + E$$

:055 Now the following relationships hold:

:056 (1) $UTC1 - DeltaTime < TSRBTCV - (TSRBTCV - TSR1TCV) < UTC1$

:057 (2) $UTC1 - DeltaTime < TSRBTCV + HashTimeDelta + E < UTC1$

:058 (3) $UTC1 - HashTimeDelta - DeltaTime - E < TSRBTCV < UTC1 - HashTimeDelta + E$

:059 (4) $TSRBTCV = (UTC1 - HashTimeDelta - DeltaTime/2) + (E + DeltaTime/2)$

:060 This has the correct properties

:061 As $DeltaTime$ grows so does the error bar (or the uncertainty of the time association)

:062 As the difference between the time of the measurement and the time of the time stamp
:063 grows, so does the E as a function of E is $HashTimeDelta$

:064 **End of informative comment**

:065 20.4 Additional Comments and Questions

:066 **Start of informative comment**

:067 Time Difference

:068 If two things are time stamped, say at $TCVs$ and $TCVe$ (for TCV at start, TCV at end) then
:069 any entity can calculate the time difference between the two events and will get:

:070
$$TimeDiff = k1 * |TCVe - TCVs| + k2 * |TCVe - TCVs|$$

:071 This $TimeDiff$ does not indicate what time the two events occurred at it merely gives the
:072 time between the events. This time difference doesn't require a Time Authority.

:073 Why is TSN (tick session nonce) required?

:074 Without it, there is no way to associate a Time Authority stamp with any TSV , as the TSV
:075 resets at the start of every tick session. The TSN proves that the concatenation of TSV and
:076 TSN is unique.

:077 How does the protocol prevent replay attacks?

:078 The TPM signs the TSR sent to the TA. This TSR contains the unique combination of TSV
:079 and TSN. Since the TSN is unique to a tick session and the TSV continues to increment any
:080 attempt to recreate the same TSR will fail. If the TPM is reset such that the TSV is at the
:081 same value, the TSN will be a new value. If the TPM is not reset then the TSV continues to
:082 increment and will not repeat.

:083 **How does EntityA know that the TSR1 that the TA signs is recent?**

:084 It doesn't. EntityA checks however to ensure that the TSN is the same in all TSR. This
:085 ensures that the values are all related. If TSR1 is an old value then the HashTimeDelta will
:086 be a large value and the uncertainty of the relation of the signing to the UTC will be large.

:087 **Why does associating a UTC time with a TSV take two steps?**

:088 This is because it takes some time between when a request goes to a time authority and
:089 when the response comes. The protocol measures this time and uses it to create the time
:090 deltas. The relationship of TSV to UTC is somewhere between the request and response.

:091 **Affect of power on the tick counter**

:092 As the TPM is not required to maintain an internal clock and battery, how the platform
:093 provides power to the TPM affects the ability to maintain the tick counter. The original
:094 mechanism had the TPM maintaining an indication of how the platform provided the power.
:095 Previous performance does not predict what might occur in the future, as the platform may
:096 be unable to continue to provide the power (dead battery, pulled plug from wall etc). With
:097 the knowledge that the TPM cannot accurately report the future, the specification deleted
:098 tick type from the TPM.

:099 The information relative to what the platform is doing to provide power to the TPM is now a
:100 responsibility of the TSS. The TSS should first determine how the platform was built, using
:101 the platform credential. The TSS should also attempt to determine the actual performance
:102 of the TPM in regards to maintaining the tick count. The TSS can help in this determination
:103 by keeping track of the tick nonce. The tick nonce changes each time the tick count is lost.
:104 By comparing the tick nonce across system events the TSS can obtain a heuristic that
:105 represents how the platform provides power to the TPM.

:106 The TSS must define a standard set of values as to when the tick nonce continues to
:107 increment across system events.

:108 The following are some PC implementations that give the flavor of what is possible regarding
:109 the clock on a specific platform.

:110 TICK_INC - No TPM power battery. Clock comes from PCI clock, may stop from time to time
:111 due to clock stopping protocols such as CLKRUN.

:112 TICK_POWER - No TPM power battery. Clock source comes from PCI clock, always runs
:113 except in S3+.

:114 TICK_STSTATE - External power (might be battery) consumed by TPM during S3 only. Clock
:115 source comes either from a system clock that runs during S3 or from crystal/internal TPM
:116 source.

:117 TICK_STCLEAR - Standby power used to drive counter. In desktop, may be related to when
:118 system is plugged into wall. Clock source comes either from a system clock that runs when
:119 standby power is available or from crystal/internal TPM source.

120 TICK_ALWAYS - TPM power battery. Clock source comes either from a battery powered
121 system clock that crystal/internal TPM source.
122 **End of informative comment**

21. Context Management

Start of informative comment

The TPM is a device that contains limited resources. Caching of the resources may occur without knowledge or assistance from the application that loaded the resource. In version 1.1 there were two types of resources that had need of this support keys and authorization sessions. Each type had a separate load and restore operation. In version 1.2 there is the addition of transport sessions. To handle these situations generically 1.2 is defining a single context manager that all types of resources may use.

The concept is simple, a resource manager requests that wrapping of a resource in a manner that securely protects the resource and only allows the restoring of the resource on the same TPM and during the same operational cycle.

Consider a key successfully loaded on the TPM. The parent keys that loaded the key may have required a different set of PCR registers than are currently set on the TPM. For example, the end result is to have key5 loaded. Key3 is protected by key2, which is protected by key1, which is protected by the SRK. Key1 requires PCR1 to be in a certain state, key2 requires PCR2 to load and key3 requires PCR3. Now at some point in time after key1 loaded key2, PCR1 was extended with additional information. If key3 is evicted then there is no way to reload key3 until the platform is rebooted. To avoid this type of problem the TPM can execute context management routines. The context management routines save key3 in its current state and allow the TPM to restore the state without having to use the parent keys (key1 and key2).

There are numerous issues with performing context management on sessions. These issues revolve around the use of the nonces in the session. If an attacker can successfully store, attack, fail and then reload the session the attacker can repeat the attack many times.

The key that the TPM uses to encrypt blobs may be a volatile or non-volatile key. One mechanism would be for the TPM to generate a new key on each TPM_Startup command. Another would be for the TPM to generate the key and store it persistently in the TPM_PERMANENT_DATA area.

The symmetric key should be relatively the same strength as a 2048-bit RSA key. 128-bit AES or a full three key triple DES would be appropriate.

End of informative comment

1. Context management is a required function.
2. Execution of the context commands MUST NOT cause the exposure of any TPM shielded location.
3. The TPM MUST NOT allow the context saving of the EK or the SRK.
4. The TPM MAY use either symmetric or asymmetric encryption. For asymmetric encryption the TPM MUST use a 2048 RSA key.
5. A wrapped session blob MUST only be loadable once. A wrapped key blob MAY be reloadable.
6. The TPM MUST support a minimum of 16 concurrent saved contexts other than keys. There is no minimum or maximum number of concurrent saved key contexts.

- ¶164 7. All external session blobs (of type TPM_RT_TRANS or TPM_RT_AUTH) can be invalidated
¶165 upon specific request (via TPM_FlushXXX using TPM_RT_CONTEXT as resource type),
¶166 this does not include session blobs of type TPM_RT_KEY.
- ¶167 8. External session blobs are invalidated on TPM_Startup(ST_CLEAR) or on
¶168 TPM_Startup(any) based on the startup effects settings
- ¶169 a. Session blobs of type TPM_RT_KEY with the attributes of parentPCRStatus = FALSE
¶170 and IsVolatile = FALSE SHOULD not be invalidated on TPM_Startup(any)
- ¶171 9. All external sessions invalidate automatically upon installation of a new owner due to the
¶172 setting of a new tpmProof.
- ¶173 10. If the TPM enters failure mode ALL session blobs (including keys) MUST be invalidated
- ¶174 a. Invalidation includes ensuring that contextNonceKey and contextNonceSession will
¶175 change when the TPM recovers from the failure.
- ¶176 11. Attempts to restore a wrapped blob after the successful completion of
¶177 TPM_Startup(ST_CLEAR) MUST fail. The exception is a wrapped key blob which may be
¶178 long-term and which MAY restore after a TPM_Startup(ST_CLEAR).
- ¶179 12. The save and load context commands are the generic equivalent to the context
¶180 commands in 1.1. Version 1.2 deprecates the following commands:
- ¶181 a. TPM_AuthSaveContext
- ¶182 b. TPM_AuthLoadContext
- ¶183 c. TPM_KeySaveContext
- ¶184 d. TPM_KeyLoadContext

185 **22. Eviction**

186 **Start of informative comment**

187 The TPM has numerous resources held inside of the TPM that may need eviction. The need
188 for eviction occurs when the number or resources in use by the TPM exceed the available
189 space. For resources that are hard to reload (i.e. keys tied to PCR values) the outside entity
190 should first perform a context save before evicting items.

191 In version 1.1 there were separate commands to evict separate resource types. This new
192 command set uses the resource types defined for context saving and creates a generic
193 command that will evict all resource types.

194 **End of informative comment**

- 195 1. The TPM MUST NOT flush the EK or SRK using this command.
- 196 2. Version 1.2 deprecates the following commands:
- 197 a. TPM_Terminate_Handle
 - 198 b. TPM_EvictKey
 - 199 c. TPM_Reset

23. Session pool

Start of informative comment

The TPM supports two types of sessions that use the rolling nonce protocol, authorization and transport. These sessions require much of the same handling and internal storage by the TPM. To allow more flexibility the internal storage for these sessions will be defined as coming from the same pool (or area).

The pool requires that three (3) sessions be available. The entities using the TPM can determine the usage models of what sessions are active. This allows a TPM to have 3 authorization sessions or 3 transport sessions at one time.

Using all available pool resources for transport sessions is not a very usable model. If all resources are in use by transport there is no resources available for authorization sessions and hence no ability to execute any commands requiring authorization. A more realistic model would be to have two transport sessions and one authorization session. While this is an unrealistic model for actual execution there will be no requirement that the TPM prevent this from happening. A model of how it could occur would be when there are two applications running, both using 2 transport sessions and one authorization session. When switching between the applications if the requirement was that only 2 transport sessions could be active the TSS that would provide the context switch would have to ensure that the transport sessions were context saved first.

Sessions can be virtualized, so while the TPM may only have 3 loaded sessions, there may be an unlimited number of context saved sessions stored outside the TPM.

End of informative comment

1. The TPM MUST support a minimum of three (3) concurrent sessions. The sessions MAY be any mix of authentication and transport sessions.

24. Initialization Operations

Start of informative comment

Initialization is the process where the TPM establishes an operating environment from a no power state. Initialization occurs in many different flavors with PCR, keys, handles, sessions and context blobs all initialized, reloaded or unloaded according to the rules and platform environment.

Initialization does not affect the operational characteristics of the TPM (like TPM Ownership).

Clear is the process of returning the TPM to factory defaults. The clear commands need protection from unauthorized use and must allow for the possibility of changing Owners. The clear process requires authorization to execute and locks to prevent unauthorized operation.

The clear functionality performs the following tasks:

Invalidate SRK. Invalidating the SRK invalidates all protected storage areas below the SRK in the hierarchy. The areas below are not destroyed they just have no mechanism to be loaded anymore.

All TPM volatile and non-volatile data is set to default value except the endorsement key pair. The clear includes the Owner-AuthData, so after performing the clear, the TPM has no Owner. The PCR values are undefined after a clear operation.

The TPM shall return TPM_NOSRK until an Owner is set. After the execution of the clear command, the TPM must go through a power cycle to properly set the PCR values.

The Owner has ultimate control of when a clear occurs.

The Owner can perform the TPM_OwnerClear command using the TPM Owner authorization. If the Owner wishes to disable this clear command and require physical access to perform the clear, the Owner can issue the TPM_DisableOwnerClear command.

During the TPM startup processing anyone with physical access to the machine can issue the TPM_ForceClear command. This command performs the clear. The TPM_DisableForceClear disables the TPM_ForceClear command for the duration of the power cycle. TSS startup code that does not issue the TPM_DisableForceClear leaves the TPM vulnerable to a denial of service attack. The assumption is that the TSS startup code will issue the TPM_DisableForceClear on each power cycle after the TSS determines that it will not be necessary to issue the TPM_ForceClear command. The purpose of the TPM_ForceClear command is to recover from the state where the Owner has lost or forgotten the TPM Ownership token.

The TPM_ForceClear must only be possible when the issuer has physical access to the platform. The manufacturer of a platform determines the exact definition of physical access.

End of informative comment

1. The TPM MUST support proper initialization. Initialization MUST properly configure the TPM to execute in the platform environment.
2. Initialization MUST ensure that handles, keys, sessions, context blobs and PCR are properly initialized, reloaded or invalidated according to the platform environment.

- 265 3. The description of the platform environment arrives at the TPM in a combination of
266 TPM_Init and TPM_Startup.

i267 **25. HMAC digest rules**

i268 **Start of informative comment**

i269 The order of calculation of the HMAC is critical to being able to validate the authorization
i270 and parameters of a command. All commands use the same order and format for the
i271 calculation.

i272 A more exact representation of a command would be the following

i273 *****
i274 * TAG | LEN | ORD | HANDLES | DATA | AUTH1 (o) | AUTH2 (o) *
i275 *****

i276 The text area for the HMAC calculation would be the concatenation of the following:

i277 ORD || DATA

i278 **End of informative comment**

i279 The HMAC digest of parameters uses the following order

- i280 1. Skip tag and length
i281 2. Include ordinal. This is the 1S parameter in the HMAC column for each command
i282 3. Skip handle(s). This includes key and other session handles
i283 4. Include data and other parameters for the command. This starts with the 2S parameter
i284 in the HMAC column for each command.
i285 5. Skip all AuthData values.

26. Generic authorization session termination rules

Start of informative comment

These rules are the generic rules that govern all authorization sessions, a specific session type may have additional rules or modifications of the generic rules

End of informative comment

1. A TPM SHALL unilaterally perform the actions of TPM_FlushSpecific for a session upon any of the following events
 - a. “continueUse” flag in the authorization session is FALSE
 - b. Shared secret of the session in use to create the exclusive-or for confidentiality of data. Example is TPM_ChangeAuth terminates the authorization session. TPM_ExecuteTransport does not terminate the session due to protections inherent in transport sessions.
 - c. When the associated entity is invalidated
 - d. When the command returns a fatal error. This is due to error returns not setting a nonceEven. Without a new nonceEven the rolling nonces sequence is broken hence the TPM MUST terminate the session.
 - e. Failure of an authorization check at the start of the command
 - f. Execution of TPM_Startup(ST_CLEAR)
2. The TPM MAY perform the actions of TPM_FlushSpecific for a session upon the following events
 - a. Execution of TPM_Startup(ST_STATE)

!307 **27. PCR Grand Unification Theory**

!308 **Start of informative comment**

!309 This section discusses the unification of PCR definition and use with locality.

!310 The PCR allow the definition of a platform configuration. With the addition of locality, the
!311 meaning of a configuration is somewhat larger. This section defines how the two combine to
!312 provide the TPM user information relative to the platform configuration.

!313 These are the issues regarding PCR and locality at this time

!314 **Definition of configuration**

!315 A configuration is the combination of PCR, PCR attributes and the locality.

!316 **Passing the creators configuration to the user of data**

!317 For many reasons, from the creator's viewpoint and the user's viewpoint, the configuration
!318 in use by the creator is important information. This information needs transmitting to the
!319 user with the data and with integrity.

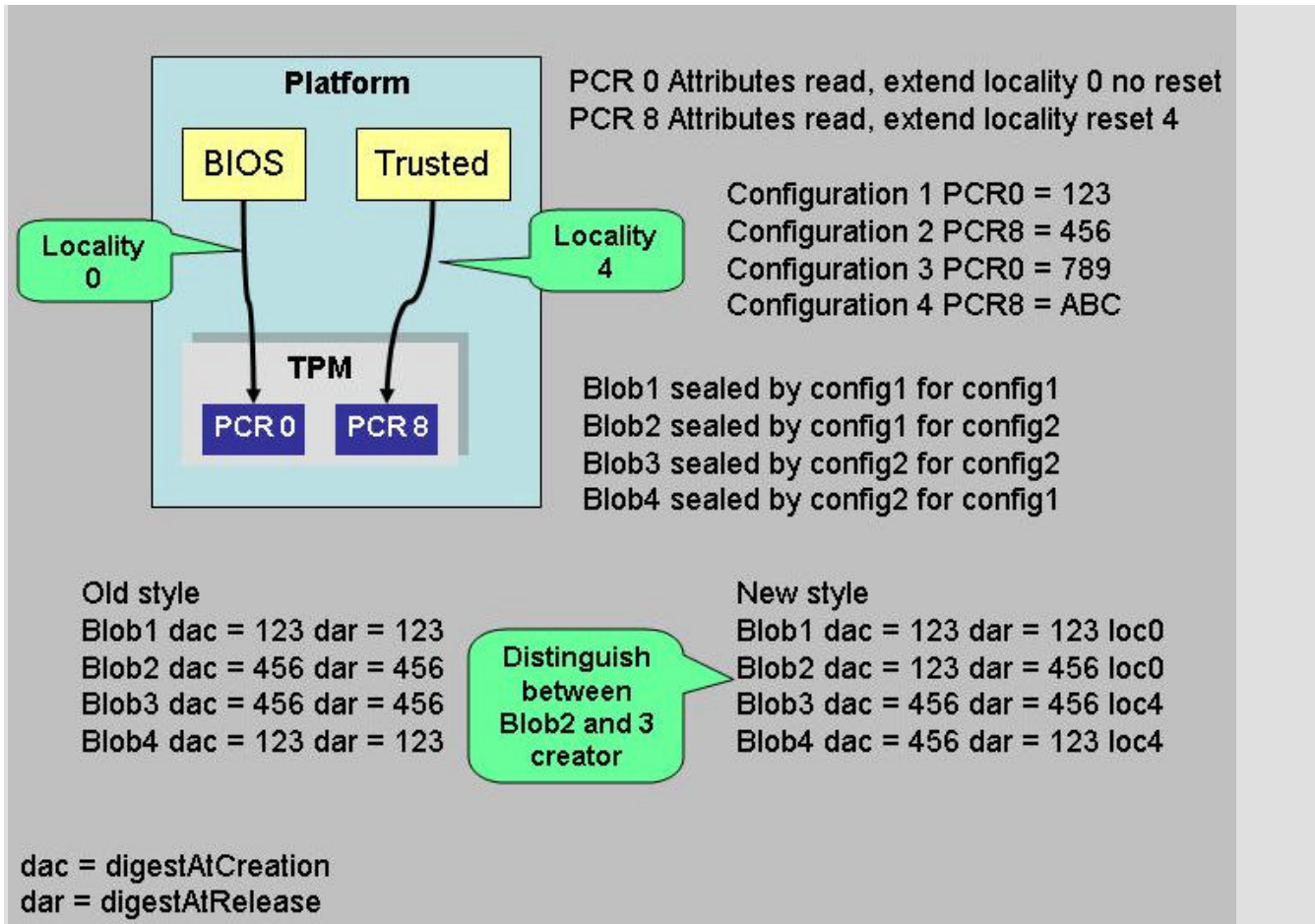
!320 The configuration must include the locality and may not be the same configuration that will
!321 use the data. This allows one configuration to seal a value for future use and the end user
!322 to know the genealogy of where the data comes from.

!323 **Definition of "Use"**

!324 See the definition of TPM_PCR_ATTRIBUTES for the attributes and the normative
!325 statements regarding the use of the attributes. The use of a configuration is when the TPM
!326 needs to ensure that the proper platform configuration is present. The first example is for
!327 Unseal, the TPM must only release the information sealed if the platform configuration
!328 matches the configuration specified by the seal creator. Here the use of locality is implicit in
!329 the PCR attributes, if PCR8 requires locality 2 to be present then the seal creator ensures
!330 that locality 2 is asserted by defining a configuration that uses PCR8.

!331 The creation of a blob that specifies a configuration for use is not a "use" itself. So the SEAL
!332 command does is not a use for specifying the use of a PCR configuration.

!333

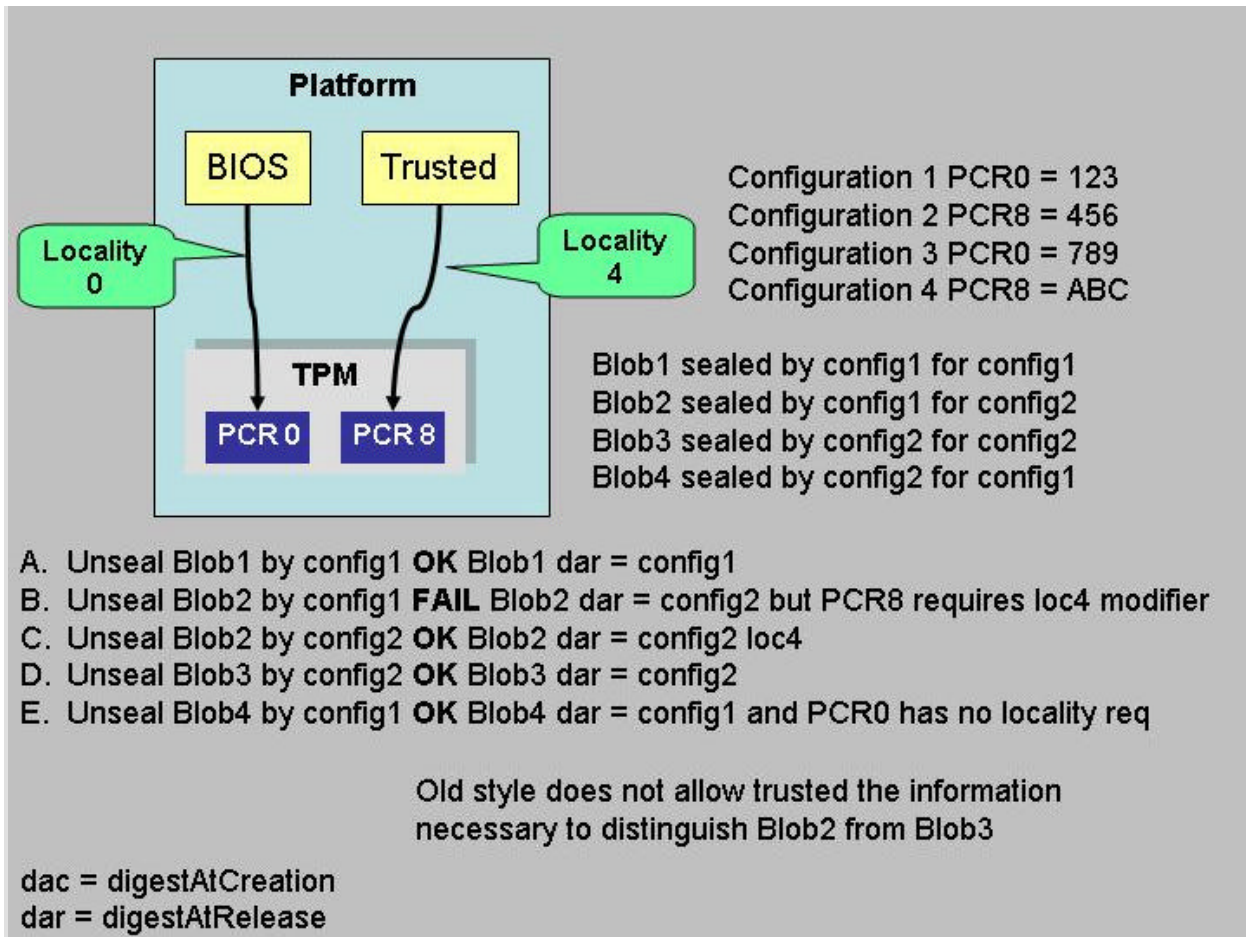


334

335

336

By using the “new style” or TPM_PCR_INFO_LONG structure the user can determine that Blob2 is different that Blob3.



:337

:338 Case B is the only failure and this shows the use of the locality modifier and PCR locality
:339 attribute.

:340 Additional attempts are obvious failures, config3 and config4 are unable to unseal any of
:341 the 4 blobs.

:342 One example is illustrative of the problems of just specifying locality without an
:343 accompanying PCR. Assume Blob5 which specifies a dar of config1 and a locality 4 modifier.
:344 Now either config2 or config4 can unseal Blob5. In fact there is no way to restrict ANY
:345 process that gains access to locality 4 from performing the unseal. As many platforms will
:346 have no restrictions as to which process can load in locality 4 there is no additional benefit
:347 of specifying a locality modifier. If the sealer wants protections, they need to specify a PCR
:348 that requires a locality modifier.

:349 **Defining locality modifiers dynamically**

:350 This feature would enable the platform to specify how and when a locality modifier applies
:351 to a PCR. The current definition of PCR attributes has the values set in TPM manufacturing
:352 and static for all TPM in a specific platform type (like a PC).

:353 Defining dynamic attributes would make the use of a PCR very difficult. The sealer would
:354 have to have some way of ensuring that their wishes were enforced and challengers would
:355 have to pay close attention to the current PCR attributes. For these reasons the setting of

the PCR attributes is defined as a static operation made during the platform specific specification.

End of informative comment

27.1 Validate Key for use

Start of informative comment

The following shows the order and checks done before the use of a key that has PCR or locality restrictions.

Note that there is no check for the PCR registers on the DSAP session. This is due to the fact that DSAP checks for the continued validity of the PCR that are attached to the DSAP and any change causes the invalidation of the DSAP session.

The checks must validate the locality of the DSAP session as the PCR registers in use could have locality restrictions.

End of informative comment

1. If the authorization session is DSAP
 - a. If the DSAP -> localityAtRelease is not 0x1F (or in other words some localities are not allowed)
 - i. Validate that TPM_STANY_FLAGS -> localityModifier is matched by DSAP -> pcrInfo -> localityAtRelease, on mismatch return TPM_BAD_LOCALITY
 - b. If DSAP -> digestAtRelease is not 0
 - i. Calculate the current digest and compare to digestAtRelease, return TPM_BAD_PCR on mismatch
 - c. If the DSAP points to an ordinal delegation
 - i. Check that the DSAP authorizes the use of the intended ordinal
 - d. If the DSAP points to a key delegation
 - i. Check that the DSAP authorizes the use of the key
 - e. If the key delegated is a CMK key
 - i. The TPM MUST check the CMK_DELEGATE restrictions
2. Set LK to the loaded key that is being used
3. If LK -> pcrInfoSize is not 0
 - a. If LK -> pcrInfo -> releasePCRSelection identifies the use of one or more PCR
 - i. Calculate H1 a TPM_COMPOSITE_HASH of the PCR selected by LK -> pcrInfo -> releasePCRSelection
 - ii. Compare H1 to LK -> pcrInfo -> digestAtRelease on mismatch return TPM_WRONGPCRVAL
 - b. If localityAtRelease is NOT 0x1F
 - i. Validate that TPM_STANY_FLAGS -> localityModifier is matched by LK -> pcrInfo -> localityAtRelease on mismatch return TPM_BAD_LOCALITY

1393 4. Allow use of the key

394 28. Non Volatile Storage

395 **Start of informative comment**

396 The TPM contains protected non-volatile storage. There are many uses of this type of area;
397 however, a TPM needs to have a defined set of operations that touch any protected area.
398 The idea behind these instructions is to provide an area that the manufacturers and owner
399 can use for storing information in the TPM.

400 The TCG will define a limited set of information that it sees a need of storing in the TPM.
401 The TPM and platform manufacturer may add additional areas.

402 The NV storage area has a limited use before it will no longer operate, hence the NV
403 commands are under TPM Owner control.

404 A defined set of indexes are available when no TPM Owner is present to allow TPM and
405 platform manufacturers the ability to fill in values before a TPM Owner exists.

406 To locate if an index is available, use TPM_GetCapability to return the index and the size of
407 the are in use by the index.

408 The area may not be larger than the TPM input buffer. The TPM will report the maximum
409 size available to allocate.

410 The storage area is an opaque area to the TPM. The TPM, other than providing the storage,
411 does not review the internals of the area.

412 To SEAL a blob the creator of the area specifies the use of PCR registers to read the value.
413 This is the exact property of SEAL.

414 To obtain a signed indication of what is in a NV store area the caller would setup a
415 transport session with logging on and then get the signed log. The log shows the parameters
416 so the caller can validate that the TPM holds the value.

417 There is an attribute, for each index, that defines the expected write scheme for the index.
418 The TPM may handle data storage differently based on the write scheme attribute that
419 defines the expected for the index. Whenever possible the NV memory should be allocated
420 with the write scheme attribute set to update as one block and not as individual bytes.

421 **End of informative comment**

- 422 1. The TPM MUST support the NV commands. The TPM MUST support the NV area as
423 defined by the TPM_NV_INDEX values.
- 424 2. The TPM MAY manage the storage area using any allocation and garbage collection
425 scheme.
- 426 3. To remove an area from the NV store the TPM owner would use the
427 TPM_NV_DefineSpace command with a size of 0. Any authorized user can change the
428 value written in the NV store.
- 429 4. The TPM MUST treat the NV area as a shielded location.
 - 430 a. The TPM does not provide any additional protections (like additional encryption) to
431 the NV area.
- 432 5. If a write operation is interrupted, then the TPM makes no guarantees about the data
433 stored at the specified index. It MAY be the previous value, MAY be the new value or

- ‡434 MAY be undefined or unpredictable. After the interruption the TPM MAY indicate that
‡435 the index contains unpredictable information.
- ‡436 a. The TPM MUST ensure that in case of interruption of a write to an index that all
‡437 other indexes are not affected
- ‡438 6. Minimum size of NV area is platform specific. The maximum area is TPM vendor specific.
- ‡439 7. A TPM MUST NOT use the NV area to store any data dependent on data structures
‡440 defined in Part II of the TPM specifications, except for the NV Storage Structures implied
‡441 by required index values or reserved index values
- ‡442 8. A TPM MUST NOT use the NV area to store any data dependent on data structures
‡443 defined in Part II of the TPM specifications, except for the NV Storage Structures implied
‡444 by required index values or reserved index values

‡445 **28.1 NV storage design principles**

‡446 **Start of informative comment**

‡447 This section lists the design principles that motivate the NV area in the TPM. There was the
‡448 realization that the current design made use of NV storage but not necessarily efficiently.
‡449 The DIR, BIT and other commands placed demands on the TPM designer and required
‡450 areas that while allowing for flexible use reserved space most likely never used (like DIR for
‡451 locality 1).

‡452 The following are the design principles that drive the function definitions.

- ‡453 1. Provide efficient use of NV area on the TPM. NV storage is a very limited resource and
‡454 data stored in the NV area should be as small as possible.
- ‡455 2. The TPM does not control, edit, validate or manipulate in any manner the information in
‡456 the NV store. The TPM is merely a storage device. The TPM does enforce the access rules as
‡457 set by the TPM Owner.
- ‡458 3. Allocation of the NV area for a specific use must be under control of the TPM Owner.
- ‡459 4. The TPM Owner, when defining the area to use, will set the access and use policy for the
‡460 area. The TPM Owner can set AuthData values, delegations, PCR values and other controls
‡461 on the access allowed to the area.
- ‡462 5. There must be a capability to allow TPM and platform manufacturers to use this area
‡463 without a TPM Owner being present. This allows the manufacturer to place information into
‡464 the TPM without an onerous manufacturing flow. Information in this category would
‡465 include EK credential and platform credential.
- ‡466 6. The management and use of the NV area should not require a large number of ordinals.
- ‡467 7. The management and use of the NV area should not introduce new operating strategies
‡468 into the TPM and should be easy to implement.

‡469 **End of informative comment**

‡470 **28.1.1 NV Storage use models**

‡471 **Start of informative comment**

‡472 This informative section describes some of the anticipated use models and the attributes a
 ‡473 user of the storage area would need to set.

‡474

‡475 **Owner authorized for all access**

‡476 TPM_NV_DefineSpace: attributes = PER_OWERREAD || PER_OWNERWRITE

‡477 WriteValue(TPM Owner Auth, data)

‡478 ReadValue(TPM Owner Auth, data)

‡479

‡480 **Set AuthData value**

‡481 TPM_NV_DefineSpace: attributes = PER_AUTHREAD || PER_AUTHWRITE, auth =
 ‡482 authValue

‡483 WriteValue(authValue, data)

‡484 ReadValue(authValue, data)

‡485

‡486 **Write once, only way to change is to delete and redefine**

‡487 TPM_NV_DefineSpace: attributes = PER_WRITEDEFINE

‡488 WriteValue(size = x, data) // successful

‡489 WriteValue(size = 0) // locks

‡490 WriteValue(size = x) // fails

‡491 ...

‡492 TPM_Startup(ST_Clear) // Does not affect lock

‡493 WriteValue(size = x, data) // fails

‡494

‡495 **Write until specific index is locked, lock reset on Startup(ST_Clear)**

‡496 TPM_NV_DefineSpace: index = 3, attributes = PER_WRITE_STCLEAR

‡497 TPM_NV_DefineSpace: index = 5, attributes = PER_WRITE_STCLEAR

‡498 WriteValue(index = 3, size = x, data) // successful

‡499 WriteValue(index = 5, size = x, data) // successful

‡500 WriteValue(index = 3, size = 0) // locks

‡501 WriteValue(index = 3, size = x, data) // fails

‡502 WriteValue(index = 5, size = x, data) // successful

‡503 ...

‡504 TPM_Startup(ST_Clear) // clears lock

‡505 WriteValue(index = 3, size = x, data) // successful

‡506 WriteValue(index = 5, size = x, data) // successful

```
!507
!508 Write until index 0 is locked, lock reset by Startup(ST_Clear)
!509 TPM_NV_DefineSpace: attributes = PER_GLOBALLOCK, index = 5
!510 TPM_NV_DefineSpace: attributes = PER_GLOBALLOCK, index = 3
!511 WriteValue( index = 3, size = x, data) // successful
!512 WriteValue( index = 5, size = x, data) // successful
!513
!514 WriteValue(index = 0) // sets SV -> bGlobalLock to TRUE
!515 WriteValue( index = 3, size = x, data) // fails
!516 WriteValue( index = 5, size = x, data) // fails
!517 ...
!518 TPM_Startup(ST_Clear) // clears lock
!519 WriteValue( index = 3, size = x, data) // successful
!520 WriteValue( index = 5, size = x, data) // successful
!521 End of informative comment
```

!522 **28.2 Use of NV storage during manufacturing**

!523 **Start of informative comment**

!524 The TPM needs the ability to write values to the NV store during manufacturing. It is
!525 possible that the values written at this time would require authorization during normal TPM
!526 use. The actual enforcement of these authorizations during manufacturing would cause
!527 numerous problems for the manufacturer.

!528 The TPM will not enforce the NV authorization restrictions until the execution of a
!529 TPM_NV_DefineSpace with the handle of TPM_NV_INDEX_LOCK.

!530 **End of informative comment**

- !531 1. The TPM MUST NOT enforce the NV authorizations (auth values, PCR etc.) prior to the
!532 execution of TPM_NV_DefineSpace with an index of TPM_NV_INDEX_LOCK
 - !533 a. While the TPM is not enforcing NV authorizations, the TPM SHALL allow the use of
!534 TPM_NV_DefineSpace in any operational state (disabled, deactivated)

:535 29. Delegation Model

:536 **Start of informative comment**

:537 The TPM Owner is an entity with a single “super user” privilege to control TPM operation.
:538 Thus if any aspect of a TPM requires management, the TPM Owner must perform that task
:539 himself or reveal his privilege information to another entity. This other entity thereby
:540 obtains the privilege to operate all TPM controls, not just those intended by the Owner.
:541 Therefore the Owner often must have greater trust in the other entity than is strictly
:542 necessary to perform an arbitrary task.

:543 This delegation model addresses this issue by allowing delegation of individual TPM Owner
:544 privileges (the right to use individual Owner authorized TPM commands) to individual
:545 entities, which may be trusted processes.

:546 Basic requirements:

:547 **Consumer user does not need to enter or remember a TPM Owner password.** This is an
:548 ease of use and security issue. Not remembering the password may lead to bad security
:549 practices, increased tech support calls and lost data.

:550 **Role based administration and separation of duty.** It should be possible to delegate just
:551 enough Owner privileges to perform some administration task or carry out some duty,
:552 without delegating all Owner privileges.

:553 **TPM should support multiple trusted processes.** When a platform has the ability to load
:554 and execute multiple trusted processes then the TPM should be able to participate in the
:555 protection of secrets and proper management of the processes and their secrets. In fact, the
:556 TPM most likely is the root of storage for these values. The TPM should enable the proper
:557 management, protection and distribution of values held for the various trusted processes
:558 that reside on the same platform.

:559 **Trusted processes may require restrictions.** A fundamental security tenet is the principle
:560 of least privilege, that is, to limit process functionality to only the functions necessary to
:561 accomplish the task. This delegation model provides a building block that allows a system
:562 designer to create single purpose processes and then ensure that the process only has
:563 access to the functions that it requires to complete the task.

:564 **Maintain the current authorization structure and protocols.** There is no desire to
:565 remove the current TPM Owner and the protocols that authorize and manage the TPM
:566 Owner. The capabilities are a delegation of TPM Owner responsibilities. The delegation
:567 allows the TPM Owner to delegate some or all of the actions that a TPM Owner can perform.
:568 The TPM Owner has complete control as to when and if the capability delegation is in use.

:569 **End of informative comment**

:570 29.1 Table Requirements

:571 **Start of informative comment**

:572 **No ocean front property in table** – We want the table to be virtually unlimited in size.
:573 While we need some storage, we do not want to pick just one number and have that be the
:574 min and max. This drives the need for the ability to save, off the TPM, delegation elements.

:575 **Revoking a delegation, does not affect other** delegations – The TPM Owner may, at any
:576 time, determine that a delegation is no longer appropriate. The TPM Owner needs to be able

to ensure the revocation of all delegations in the same family. The TPM Owner also wants to ensure that revocation done in one family does not affect any other family of delegations.

Table seeded by OEM – The OEM should do the seeding of the table during manufacturing. This allows the OEM to ship the platform and make it easy for the platform owner to startup the first time. The definition of manufacturing in this context includes any time prior to or including the time the user first turns on the platform.

Table not tied to a TPM owner – The table is not tied to the existence of a TPM owner. This facilitates the seeding of the table by the OEM.

External delegations need authorization and assurance of revocation – When a delegation is held external to the TPM, the TPM must ensure authorization of the delegation when loading the delegation. Upon revocation of a family or other family changes the TPM must ensure that prior valid delegations are not successfully loaded.

90% case, no need for external store – The normal case should be that the platform does not need to worry about having external delegations. This drives the need for some NV storage to hold a minimum number of table rows.

End of informative comment

29.2 How this works

Start of informative comment

The existing TPM owner authorization model is that certain TPM commands require the authorization of the TPM Owner to operate. The authorization value is the TPM Owners token. Using the token to authorize the command is proof of TPM Ownership. There is only one token and knowledge of this token allows all operations that require proof of TPM Ownership.

This extension allows the TPM Owner to create a new AuthData value and to delegate some of the TPM Ownership rights to the new AuthData value.

The use model of the delegation is to create an authorization session (DSAP) using the delegated AuthData value instead of the TPM Owner token. This allows delegation to work without change to any current command.

The intent is to permit delegation of selected Owner privileges to selected entities, be they local or remote, separate from the current software environment or integrated into the current software environment. Thus Owner privileges may be delegated to entities on other platforms, to entities (trusted processes) that are part of the normal software environment on the Owner's platform, or to a minimalist software environment on the Owner's platform (created by booting from a CDROM, or special disk partition), for example.

Privileges may be delegated to a particular entity via definition of a particular process on the Owner's platform (by dictating PCR values), and/or by stipulating a particular AuthData value. The resultant TPM_DELEGATE_OWNER_BLOB and any AuthData value must be passed by the Owner to the chosen entity.

Delegation to an external entity (not on the Owner's platform) probably requires an AuthData value and a NULL PCR selection. (But the AuthData value might be sealed to a desired set of PCRs in that remote platform.)

:618 Delegation to a trusted process provided by the local OS requires a PCR that indicates the
:619 trusted process. The authorization token should be a fixed value (any well known value),
:620 since the OS has no means to safely store the authorization token without sealing that
:621 token to the PCR that indicates the trusted process. It is suggested that the value
:622 0x111...111 be used.

:623 Delegation to a specially booted entity requires either a PCR or an authorization token, and
:624 preferably both, to recognize both the process and the fact that the Owner wishes that
:625 process to execute.

:626 The central delegation data structure is a set of tables. These tables indicate the command
:627 ordinals delegated by the TPM Owner to a particular defined environment. The tables allow
:628 the distinction of delegations belonging to different environments.

:629 The TPM is capable of storing internally a few table elements to enable the passing of the
:630 delegation information from an entity that has no access to memory or storage of the
:631 defined environment.

:632 The number of delegations that the tables can hold is a dynamic number with the
:633 possibility of adding or deleting entries at any time. As the total number is dynamic, and
:634 possibly large, the TPM provides a mechanism to cache the delegations. The cache of a
:635 delegation must include integrity and confidentiality. The term for the encrypted cached
:636 entity is blob. The blob contains a counter (verificationCount) validated when the TPM loads
:637 the blob.

:638 An Owner uses the counter mechanism to prevent the use of undesirable blobs; they
:639 increment verificationCount inside the TPM and insert the current value of
:640 verificationCount into selected table elements, including temporarily loaded blobs. (This is
:641 the reason why a TPM must still load a blob that has an incorrect verificationCount.) An
:642 Owner can verify the delegation state of his platform (immediately after updating
:643 verificationCount) by keeping copies of the elements that have just been given the current
:644 value of verificationCount, signing those copies, and sending them to a third party.

:645 Verification probably requires interaction with a third party because acceptable table
:646 profiles will change with time and the most important reason for verification is suspicion of
:647 the state of a TOS in a platform. Such suspicion implies that the verification check must be
:648 done by a trusted security monitor (perhaps separate trusted software on another platform
:649 or separate trusted software on CDROM, for example). The signature sent to the third party
:650 must include a freshness value, to prevent replay attacks, and the security monitor must
:651 verify that a response from the third party includes that freshness value. In situations
:652 where the highest confidence is required, the third party could provide the response by an
:653 out-of-band mechanism, such as an automated telephone service with spoken confirmation
:654 of acceptability of platform state and freshness value.

:655 A challenger can verify an entire family using a single transport session with logging, that
:656 increments the verification count, updates the verification count in selected blobs, reads the
:657 tables and obtains a single transport session signature over all of the blobs in a family.

:658 If no Owner is installed, the delegation mechanisms are inoperative and third party
:659 verification of the tables is impossible, but tables can still be administered and corrected.
:660 (See later for more details.)

:661 To perform an operation using the delegation the entity establishes an authorization session
:662 and uses the delegated AuthData value for all HMAC calculations. The TPM validates the
:663 AuthData value, and in the case of defined environments checks the PCR values. If the

validation is successful, the TPM then validates that the delegation allows the intended operation.

There can be at least two delegation rows stored in non-volatile storage inside a TPM, and these may be changed using Owner privilege or delegated Owner privilege. Each delegation table row is a member of a family, and there can be at least eight family rows stored in non-volatile storage inside a TPM. An entity belonging to one family can be delegated the privilege to create a new family and edit the rows in its own family, but no other family.

In addition to tying together delegations, the family concept and the family table also provides the mechanism for validation and revocation of exported delegate table rows, as well as the mechanism for the platform user to perform validation of all delegations in a family.

End of informative comment

29.3 Family Table

Start of informative comment

The family table has three main purposes.

1 - To provide for the grouping of rows in the TPM_DELEGATE_TABLE; entities identified in delegate table rows as belonging to the same family can edit information in the other delegate table rows with the same family ID. This allows a family to manage itself and provides an easier mechanism during upgrades.

2 - To provide the validation and revocation mechanism for exported TPM_DELEGATE_ROWS and those stored on the TPM in the delegation table

3 - To provide the ability to perform validation of all delegations in a family

The family table must have eight rows, and may have more. The maximum number of rows is TPM vendor-defined and is available using the TPM_GetCapability command.

As the family table has a limited number of rows, there is the possibility that this number could be insufficient. However, the ability to create a virtual amount of rows, like done for the TPM_DELEGATE_TABLE would create the need to have all of the validation and revocation mechanisms that the family table provides for the delegate table. This could become a recursive process, so for this version of the specification, the recursion stops at the family table.

The family table contains four pieces of information: the family ID, the family label, the family verification count, and the family flags.

The family ID is a 32-bit value that provides a sequence number of the families in use.

The family label is a one-byte field that family table manager software would use to help identify the information associated with the family. Software must be able to map the numeric value associated with each family to the ASCII-string family name displayable in the user interface.

The family verification count is a 32-bit sequence number that identifies the last outside verification and attestation of the family information.

Initialization of the family table occurs by using the TPM_Delegate_Manage command with the TPM_FAMILY_CREATE option.

‡705 The verificationCount parameter enables a TPM to check that all rows of a family in the
‡706 delegate table are approved (by an external verification process), even if rows have been
‡707 stored off-TPM.

‡708 The family flags allow the use and administration of the family table row, and its associated
‡709 delegate table rows.

‡710 **Row contents**

‡711 Family ID – 32-bits

‡712 Row label – One byte

‡713 Family verification count – 32-bits

‡714 Family enable/disable use/admin flags – 32-bits

‡715 **End of informative comment**

‡716 **29.4 Delegate Table**

‡717 **Start of informative comment**

‡718 The delegate table has three main purposes, from the point of view of the TPM. This table
‡719 holds:

‡720 The list of ordinals allowable for use by the delegate

‡721 The identity of a process that can use the ordinal list

‡722 The AuthData value to use the ordinal list

‡723 The delegate table has a minimum of two (2) rows; the maximum number of rows is TPM
‡724 vendor-defined and is available using the TPM_GetCapability command. Each row
‡725 represents a delegation and, optionally, an assignment of that delegation to an identified
‡726 trusted process.

‡727 The non-volatile delegate rows permit an entity to pass delegation rows to a software
‡728 environment without regard to shared memory between the entity and the software
‡729 environment. The size of the delegate table does not restrict the number of delegations
‡730 because TPM_Delegate_CreateOwnerDelegation can create blobs for use in a DSAP session,
‡731 bypassing the delegate table.

‡732 The TPM Owner controls the tables that control the delegations, but (recursively) the TPM
‡733 Owner can delegate the management of the tables to delegated entities. Entities belonging
‡734 to a particular group (family) of delegation processes may edit delegate table entries that
‡735 belong to that family.

‡736 After creation of a delegation entry there is no restriction on the use of the delegation in a
‡737 properly authorized session. The TPM Owner has properly authorized the creation of the
‡738 delegation so the use of the delegation occurs whenever the delegate wishes to use it.

‡739 The rows of the delegate table held in non-volatile storage are only changeable under TPM
‡740 Owner authorization.

‡741 The delegate table contains six pieces of information: PCR information, the AuthData value
‡742 for the delegated capabilities, the delegation label, the family ID, the verification count, and
‡743 a profile of the capabilities that are delegated to the trusted process identified by the PCR
‡744 information.

!745 **Row Elements**

!746 ASCII label – Label that provides information regarding the row. This is not a sensitive item.

!747 Family ID – The family that the delegation belongs to; this is not a sensitive item.

!748 Verification count – Specifies the version, or generation, of this row; version validity
!749 information is in the family table. This is not a sensitive value.

!750 Delegated capabilities – The capabilities granted, by the TPM Owner, to the identified
!751 process. This is not a sensitive item.

!752 **Authorization and Identity**

!753 The creator of the delegation sets the AuthData value and the PCR selection. The creator is
!754 responsible for the protection and dissemination of the AuthData value. This is a sensitive
!755 value.

!756 **End of informative comment**

!757 1. The TPM_DELEGATE_TABLE MUST have at least two (2) rows; the maximum number of
!758 table rows is TPM-vendor defined and MUST be reported in response to a
!759 TPM_GetCapability command

!760 2. The AuthData value and the PCR selection must be set by the creator of the delegation

!761 **29.5 Delegation Administration Control**

!762 **Start of informative comment**

!763 The delegate tables (both family and delegation) present some control problems. The tables
!764 must be initialized by the platform OEM, administered and controlled by the TPM Owner,
!765 and reset on changes of TPM Ownership. To provide this level of control there are three
!766 phases of administration with different functions available in the phases.

!767 The three phases of table administration are; manufacturing (P1), no-owner (P2) and owner
!768 present (P3). These three phases allow different types of administration of the delegation
!769 tables.

!770 **Manufacturing (P1)**

!771 A more accurate definition of this phase is open, un-initialized and un-owned. It occurs
!772 after TPM manufacturing and as a result of TPM_OwnerClear or TPM_ForceClear.

!773 In P1 TPM_Delegate_Manage can initialize and manage non-volatile family rows in the TPM.
!774 TPM_Delegate_LoadOwnerDelegation can load non-volatile delegation rows in the TPM.

!775 Attacks that attempt to burnout the TPM's NV storage are frustrated by the NV store's own
!776 limits on the number of writes when no Owner is installed.

!777 **No-Owner (P2)**

!778 This phase occurs after the platform has been properly setup. The setup can occur in the
!779 platform manufacturing flow, during the first boot of the platform or at any time when the
!780 platform owner wants to lock the table settings down. There is no TPM Owner at this time.

!781 TPM_Delegate_Manage locks both the family and delegation rows. This lock can be opened
!782 only by the Owner (after the Owner has been installed, obviously) or by the act of removing

the Owner (even if no Owner is installed). Thus locked tables can be unlocked by asserting Physical Presence and executing TPM_ForceClear, without having to install an Owner.

In P2, the relevant TPM_Delegate_XXX commands all return the error TPM_DELEGATE_LOCKED. This is not an issue as there is no TPM Owner to delegate commands, so the inability to change the tables or create delegations does not affect the use of the TPM.

Owned (P3)

In this phase, the TPM has a TPM Owner and the TPM Owner manages the table as the Owner sees fit. This phase continues until the removal of the TPM Owner.

Moving from P2 to P3 is automatic upon establishment of a TPM Owner. Removal of the TPM Owner automatically moves back to P1.

The TPM Owner always has the ability to administer any table. The TPM Owner may delegate the ability to manipulate a single family or all families. Such delegations are operative only if delegations are enabled.

End of informative comment

1. When DelegateAdminLock is TRUE the TPM MUST disallow any changes to the delegate tables
2. With a TPM Owner installed, the TPM Owner MUST authorize all delegate table changes

29.5.1 Control in Phase 1

Start of informative comment

The TPM starts life in P1. The TPM has no owner and the tables are empty. It is desirable for the OEM to initialize the tables to allow delegation to start immediately after the Owner decides to enable delegation. As the setup may require changes and validation, a simple mechanism of writing to the area once is not a valid option.

TPM_Delegate_Manage and TPM_Delegate_LoadOwnerDelegation allow the OEM to fill the table, read the public parts of the table, perform reboots, reset the table and when finally satisfied as to the state of the platform, lock the table.

Alternatively, the OEM can leave the tables NULL and turn off table administration leaving the TPM in an unloaded state waiting for the eventual TPM Owner to fill the tables, as they need.

Flow to load tables

Default values of DelegateAdminLock are set either during manufacturing or are the result of TPM_OwnerClear or TPM_ForceClear.

TPM_Delegate_Manage verifies that DelegateAdminLock is FALSE and that there is no TPM Owner. The command will therefore load or manipulate the family tables as specified in the command.

TPM_Delegate_LoadOwnerDelegation verifies that DelegateAdminLock is FALSE and no TPM owner is present. The command loads the delegate information specified in the command.

End of informative comment

822 **29.5.2 Control in Phase 2**

823 **Start of informative comment**

824 In phase 2, no changes are possible to the delegate tables. The platform owner must install
825 a TPM Owner and then manage the tables, or use TPM_ForceClear to revert to phase 1.

826 **End of informative comment**

827 **29.5.3 Control in Phase 3**

828 Start of informative comment

829 The TPM_DELEGATE_TABLE requires commands that manage the table. These commands
830 include filling the table, turning use of the table on or off, turning administration of the
831 table on or off, and using the table.

832 The commands are:

833 **TPM_Delegate_Manage** - Manages the family table on a row-by-row basis: creates a new
834 family, enables/disables use of a family table row and delegate table rows that share the
835 same family ID, enables/disables administration of a family's rows in both the family table
836 and the delegate table, and invalidates an existing family.

837 **TPM_Delegate_CreateOwnerDelegation** increments the family verification count (if
838 desired) and delegates the Owner's privilege to use a set of command ordinals, by creating a
839 blob. Such blobs can be used as input data for TPM_DSAP or
840 TPM_Delegate_LoadOwnerDelegation. Incrementing the verification count and creating a
841 delegation must be an atomic operation. Otherwise no delegations are operative after
842 incrementing the verification count.

843 **TPM_Delegate_LoadOwnerDelegation** loads a delegate blob into a non-volatile delegate
844 table row, inside the TPM.

845 **TPM_Delegate_ReadTable** is used to read from the TPM the public contents of the family
846 and delegate tables that are stored on the TPM.

847 **TPM_Delegate_UpdateVerification** sets the verificationCount in an entity (a blob or a
848 delegation row) to the current family value, in order that the delegations represented by that
849 entity will continue to be accepted by the TPM.

850 **TPM_Delegate_VerifyDelegation** loads a delegate blob into the TPM, and returns success
851 or failure, depending on whether the blob is currently valid.

852 **TPM_DSAP** - opens a deferred authorization session, using either an input blob (created by
853 TPM_Delegate_CreateOwnerDelegation) or a cached blob (loaded by
854 TPM_Delegate_LoadOwnerDelegation into one of the TPM's non-volatile delegation rows).

855 **End of informative comment**

856 **29.6 Family Verification**

857 **Start of informative comment**

858 The platform user may wish to have confirmation that the delegations in use provide a
859 coherent set of delegations. This process would require some evaluation of the processes
860 granted delegations. To assist in this confirmation the TPM provides a mechanism to group

:861 all delegations of a family into a signed blob. The signed blob allows the verification agent to
:862 look at the delegations, the processes involved and make an assessment as the validity of
:863 the delegations. The third party then sends back to the platform owner the results of the
:864 assessment.

:865 To perform the creation of the signed blob the platform owner needs the ability to group all
:866 of the delegations of a single family into a transport session. The platform owner also wants
:867 an assurance that no management of the table is possible during the verification.

:868 This verification does not prove to a third party that the platform owner is not cheating.
:869 There is nothing to prevent the platform owner from performing the validation and then
:870 adding an additional delegation to the family.

:871 Here is one example protocol that retrieves the information necessary to validate the rows
:872 belonging to a particular family. Note that the local method of executing the protocol must
:873 prevent a man-in-the-middle attack using the nonce supplied by the user.

:874 The TPM Owner can increment the family verification count or use the current family
:875 verification count. Using the current family verification count carries the risk that
:876 unexamined delegation blobs permit undesirable delegations. Using an incremented
:877 verification count eliminates that risk. The entity gathering the verification data requires
:878 Owner authorization or access to a delegation that grants access to transport session
:879 commands, plus other commands depending on whether verificationCount is to be
:880 incremented. This delegation could be a trusted process that can use the delegations
:881 because of its PCR measurements, a remote entity that can use the delegations because the
:882 Owner has sent it a TPM_DELEGATE_OWNER_BLOB and AuthData value, or the host
:883 platform booted from a CDROM that can use the delegations because of its PCR
:884 measurements, and TPM_DELEGATE_OWNER_BLOB and AuthData value submitted by the
:885 Owner, for example.

:886 Verification using the current verificationCount

:887 The gathering entity requires access to a delegation that grants access to at least the
:888 ordinals to perform a transport session, plus TPM_Delegate_ReadTable and
:889 TPM_Delegate_VerifyDelegation.

:890 The TPM Owner creates a transport session with the “no other activity” attribute set. This
:891 ensures notification if other operations occur on the TPM during the validation process. (If
:892 other operations do occur, the validation processes may have been subverted.) All
:893 subsequent commands listed are performed using the transport session.

:894 TPM_Delegate_ReadTable displays all public values (including the permissions and PCR
:895 values) in the TPM.

:896 TPM_Delegate_VerifyDelegation loads each cached blob, with all public values (including the
:897 permissions and PCR values) in plain text.

:898 After verifying all blobs, TPM_ReleaseTransportSigned signs the list of transactions.

:899 The gathering entity sends the log of the transport session plus any supporting information
:900 to the validation entity, which evaluates the signed transport session log and informs the
:901 platform owner of the result of the evaluation. This could be an out-of-band process.

:902 Verification using an incremented verificationCount

:903 The gathering entity requires Owner authorization or access to a delegation that grants
:904 access to at least the ordinals to perform a transport session, plus

:905 TPM_Delegate_CreateOwnerDelegation, TPM_Delegate_ReadTable, and
:906 TPM_Delegate_UpdateVerification.

:907 The TPM Owner creates a transport session with the “no other activity” attribute set.

:908 To increment the count the TPM Owner (or a delegate) must use
:909 TPM_Delegate_CreateOwnerDelegation with increment == TRUE. That blob permits creation
:910 of new delegations or approval of existing tables and blobs. That delegation must set the
:911 PCRs of the desired (local) process and the desired AuthData value of the process. As noted
:912 previously, AuthData values should be a fixed value if the gathering entity is a trusted
:913 process that is part of the normal software environment.

:914 If new delegations are to be created, TPM_Delegate_CreateOwnerDelegation must be used
:915 with increment == FALSE.

:916 If existing blobs and delegation rows are to be reapproved,
:917 TPM_Delegate_UpdateVerification must be used to install the new value of verificationCount
:918 into those existing blobs and non-volatile rows. This exposes the blobs’ public information
:919 (including the permissions and PCR values) in plain text to the transport session.

:920 TPM_Delegate_ReadTable then exposes all public values (including the permissions and
:921 PCR values) of tables to the transport session.

:922 Again, after verifying all blobs, TPM_ReleaseTransportSigned signs the list of transactions.

:923 **End of informative comment**

:924 **29.7 Use of commands for different states of TPM**

:925 **Start of informative comment**

:926 Use the ordinal table to determine when the various commands are available for use

:927 **End of informative comment**

:928 **29.8 Delegation Authorization Values**

:929 **Start of informative comment**

:930 This section describes why, when a PCR selection is set, the AuthData value may be a fixed
:931 value, and, when the PCR selection is null, the delegation creator must select an AuthData
:932 value.

:933 A PCR value is an indication of a particular (software) environment in the local platform.
:934 Either that PCR value indicates a trusted process or not. If the trusted process is to execute
:935 automatically, there is no point in allocating a meaningful AuthData value. (The only way
:936 the trusted process could store the AuthData value is to seal it to the process’s PCR values,
:937 but the delegation mechanism is already checking the process’s PCR values.) If execution of
:938 the trusted process is dependent upon the wishes of another entity (such as the Owner), the
:939 AuthData value should be a meaningful (private) value known only to the TPM, the Owner,
:940 and that other entity. Otherwise the AuthData value should be a fixed, well known, value.

:941 If the delegation is to be controlled from a remote platform, these simple delegation
:942 mechanisms provide no means for the platform to verify the PCRs of that remote platform,
:943 and hence access to the delegation must be based solely upon knowledge of the AuthData
:944 value.

:945 End of informative comment**:946 29.8.1 Using the authorization value****:947 Start of informative comment**

:948 To use a delegation the TPM will enforce any PCR selection on use. The use definition is any
:949 command that uses the delegation authorization value to take the place of the TPM Owner
:950 authorization.

:951 PCR Selection defined

:952 In this case, the delegation has a PCR selection structure defined. Each time the TPM uses
:953 the delegation authorization value instead of the TPM Owner value the TPM would validate
:954 that the current PCR settings match the settings held in the delegation structure. The PCR
:955 selection includes the definition of localities and checks of locality occur with the checking
:956 of the PCR values. The TPM enforces use of the correct authorization value, which may or
:957 may not be a meaningful (private) value.

:958 PCR selection NULL

:959 In this case, the delegation has no PCR selection structure defined. The TPM does not
:960 enforce any particular environment before using the authorization value. Mere knowledge of
:961 the value is sufficient.

:962 End of informative comment**:963 29.9 DSAP description****:964 Start of informative comment**

:965 The DSAP opens a deferred auth session, using either a TPM_DELEGATE_BLOB as input
:966 parameter or a reference to the TPM_DELEGATE_TABLE_ROW, stored inside the TPM. The
:967 DSAP command creates an ephemeral secret to authenticate a session. The purpose of this
:968 section is to illustrate the delegation of user keys or TPM Owner authorization by creating
:969 and using a DSAP session without regard to a specific command.

:970 A key defined for a certain usage (e.g. TPM_KEY_IDENTITY) can be applied to different
:971 functions within the use model (e.g. TPM_Quote or TPM_CertifyKey). If an entity knows the
:972 AuthData for the key (key.usageAuth) it can perform all the functions, allowed for that use
:973 model of that particular key. This entity is also defined as delegation creation entity, since it
:974 can initiate the delegation process. Assume that a restricted usage entity should only be
:975 allowed to execute a subset or a single functions denoted as TPM_Example, within the
:976 specific use model of a key. (e.g. Allow the usage of a TPM_IDENTITY_KEY only for
:977 Certifying Keys, but no other function). This use model points to the selection of the DSAP
:978 as the authorization protocol to execute the TPM_Example command.

:979 To perform this scenario the delegation creation entity must know the AuthData for the key
:980 (key.usageAuth). It then has to initiate the delegation by creating a
:981 TPM_DELEGATE_KEY_BLOB via the TPM_Delegate_CreateKeyDelegation command. As a
:982 next step the delegation creation entity has to pass the TPM_DELEGATE_KEY_BLOB and
:983 the delegation AuthData (TPM_DELEGATE_SENSITIVE.authValue) to the restricted usage
:984 entity. The specification offers the TPM_DelTable_ReadAuth mechanism to perform this
:985 function. Other mechanisms may be used.

:986 The restricted usage entity can now start an TPM_DSAP session by using the
:987 TPM_DELEGATE_KEY_BLOB as input.

:988 For the TPM_Example command, the inAuth parameter provides the authorization to
:989 execute the command. The following table shows the commands executed, the parameters
:990 created and the wire formats of all of the information.

:991 <inParamDigest> is the result of the following calculation: SHA1(ordinal, inArgOne,
:992 inArgTwo). <outParamDigest> is the result of the following calculation: SHA1(returnCode,
:993 ordinal, outArgOne). inAuthSetupParams refers to the following parameters, in this order:
:994 authLastNonceEven, nonceOdd, continueAuthSession. OutAuthSetupParams refers to the
:995 following parameters, in this order: nonceEven, nonceOdd, continueAuthSession

:996 In addition to the two even nonces generated by the TPM (authLastNonceEven and
:997 nonceEven) that are used for TPM_OIAP, there is a third, labeled nonceEvenOSAP that is
:998 used to generate the shared secret. For every even nonce, there is also an odd nonce
:999 generated by the system.

.000

Caller	On the wire	Dir	TPM
Send TPM_DSAP	TPM_DSAP keyHandle nonceOddOSAP entityType entityValue	→	Decrypt sensitiveArea of entityValue If entityValue==TPM_ET_DEL_BLOB verify the integrity of the blob, and if a TPM_DELEGATE_KEY_BLOB is input verify that KeyHandle and entityValue match Create session & authHandle Generate authLastNonceEven Save authLastNonceEven with authHandle Generate nonceEvenOSAP Generate sharedSecret = HMAC(sensitiveArea.authValue., nonceEvenOSAP, nonceOddOSAP) Save keyHandle, sharedSecret with authHandle and permissions
Save authHandle, authLastNonceEven Generate sharedSecret = HMAC(sensitiveArea.authValue, nonceEvenOSAP, nonceOddOSAP) Save sharedSecret	authHandle, authLastNonceEven nonceEvenOSAP	←	Returns
Generate nonceOdd & save with authHandle. Compute inAuth = HMAC (sharedSecret, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams)			
Send TPM_Example	tag paramSize ordinal inArgOne inArgTwo authHandle nonceOdd continueAuthSession inAuth	→	Verify authHandle points to a valid session, mismatch returns TPM_AUTHFAIL Retrieve authLastNonceEven from internal session storage HM = HMAC (sharedSecret, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to inAuth. If they do not compare return with TPM_AUTHFAIL Check if command ordinal of TPM_Example is allowed in permissions. If not return TPM_DISABLED_CMD Execute TPM_Example and create returnCode Generate nonceEven to replace authLastNonceEven in session Set resAuth = HMAC(sharedSecret, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams)
Save nonceEven HM = HMAC(sharedSecret, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to resAuth. This verifies returnCode and output parameters.	tag paramSize returnCode outArgOne nonceEven continueAuthSession resAuth	←	Return output parameters If continueAuthSession is FALSE then destroy session

.001

.002

.003 Suppose now that the TPM user wishes to send another command using the same session
.004 to operate on the same key. For the purposes of this example, we will assume that the same
.005 ordinal is to be used (TPM_Example). To re-use the previous session, the
.006 continueAuthSession output boolean must be TRUE.

.007 The following table shows the command execution, the parameters created and the wire
.008 formats of all of the information.

.009 In this case, authLastNonceEven is the nonceEven value returned by the TPM with the
.010 output parameters from the first execution of TPM_Example.

Caller	On the wire	Dir	TPM
Generate nonceOdd Compute inAuth = HMAC (sharedSecret, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams) Save nonceOdd with authHandle			
Send TPM_Example	tag paramSize ordinal inArgOne inArgTwo nonceOdd continueAuthSession inAuth	→	Retrieve authLastNonceEven from internal session storage HM = HMAC (sharedSecret, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to inAuth. If they do not compare return with TPM_AUTHFAIL Execute TPM_Example and create returnCode Generate nonceEven to replace authLastNonceEven in session Set resAuth = HMAC(sharedSecret, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams)
Save nonceEven HM = HMAC(sharedSecret, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to resAuth. This verifies returnCode and output parameters.	tag paramSize returnCode outArgOne nonceEven continueAuthSession resAuth	←	Return output parameters If continueAuthSession is FALSE then destroy session

.011

.012 The TPM user could then use the session for further authorization sessions or terminate it
.013 in the ways that have been described above in TPM_OIAP. Note that termination of the
.014 DSAP session causes the TPM to destroy the shared secret.

.015 **End of informative comment**

- .016 1. The DSAP session MUST enforce any PCR selection on use. The use definition is any
.017 command that uses the delegation authorization value to take the place of the TPM
.018 Owner authorization.

.019 **30. Physical Presence**

.020 **Start of informative comment**

.021 Physical presence is a signal from the platform to the TPM that indicates the operator
.022 manipulated the hardware of the platform. Manipulation would include depressing a
.023 switch, setting a jumper, depressing a key on the keyboard or some other such action.

.024 TCG does not specify an implementation technique. The guideline is the physical presence
.025 technique should make it difficult or impossible for rogue software to assert the physical
.026 presence signal.

.027 A PC-specific physical presence mechanism might be an electrical connection from a switch,
.028 or a program that loads during power on self-test.

.029 **End of informative comment**

.030 The TPM MUST support a signal from the platform for the assertion of physical presence. A
.031 TCG platform specific specification MAY specify what mechanisms assert the physical
.032 presence signal.

.033 The platform manufacturer MUST provide for the physical presence assertion by some
.034 physical mechanism.

.035 **30.1 Use of Physical Presence**

.036 **Start of informative comment**

.037 For control purposes there are numerous commands on the TPM that require TPM Owner
.038 authorization. Included in this group of commands are those that turn the TPM on or off
.039 and those that define the operating modes of the TPM. The TPM Owner always has complete
.040 control of the TPM. What happens in two conditions: there is no TPM Owner or the TPM
.041 Owner forgets the TPM Owner AuthData value. Physical presence allows for an
.042 authorization to change the state in these two conditions.

.043 **No TPM Owner**

.044 This state occurs when the TPM ships from manufacturing (it can occur at other times
.045 also). There is no TPM Owner. It is imperative to protect the TPM from remote software
.046 processes that would attempt to gain control of the TPM. To indicate to the TPM that the
.047 TPM operating state can change (allow for the creation of the TPM Owner) the human
.048 asserts physical presence. The physical presence assertion then indicates to the TPM that
.049 changing the operating state of the TPM is authorized.

.050 **Lost TPM Owner authorization**

.051 In the case of lost, or forgotten, authorization there is a TPM Owner but no way to manage
.052 the TPM. If the TPM will only operate with the TPM Owner authorization then the TPM is no
.053 longer controllable. Here the operator of the machine asserts physical presence and
.054 removes the current TPM Owner. The assumption is that the operator will then immediately
.055 take ownership of the TPM and insert a new TPM Owner AuthData value.

.056 **Operator disabling**

.057 Another use of physical presence is to indicate that the operator wants to disable the use of
.058 the TPM. This allows the operator to temporarily turn off the TPM but not change the
.059 permanent operating mode of the TPM as set by the TPM Owner.

.060 **End of informative comment**

.061 **31. TPM Internal Asymmetric Encryption**

.062 **Start of Informative comment**

.063 For asymmetric encryption schemes, the TPM is not required to perform the blocking of
.064 information where that information cannot be encrypted in a single cryptographic
.065 operation. The schemes TPM_ES_RSAESOAEP_SHA1_MGF1 and TPM_ES_RSAESPKCSV15
.066 allow only single block encryption. When using these schemes, the caller to the TPM must
.067 perform any blocking and unblocking outside the TPM. It is the responsibility of the caller
.068 to ensure that multiple blocks are properly protected using a chaining mechanism.

.069 Note that there are inherent dangers associated with splitting information so that it can be
.070 encrypted in multiple blocks with an asymmetric key, and then chaining together these
.071 blocks together. For example, if an integrity check mechanism is not used, an attacker can
.072 encrypt his own data using the public key, and substitute this rogue block for one of the
.073 original blocks in the message, thus forcing the TPM to replace part of the message upon
.074 decryption.

.075 There is also a more subtle attack to discover the data encrypted in low-entropy blocks. The
.076 attacker makes a guess at the plaintext data, encrypts it, and substitutes the encrypted
.077 guess for the original block. When the TPM decrypts the complete message, a successful
.078 decryption will indicate that his guess was correct.

.079 There are a number of solutions which could be considered for this problem – One such
.080 solution for TPMs supporting symmetric encryption is specified in PKCS#7, section 10, and
.081 involves using the public key to encrypt a symmetric key, then using that symmetric key to
.082 encrypt the long message.

.083 For TPMs without symmetric encryption capabilities, an alternative solution may be to add
.084 random padding to each message block, thus increasing the block's entropy.

.085 **End of informative comment**

- .086 1. For a TPM_UNBIND command where the parent key has pubKey.algorithmId equal to
.087 TPM_ALG_RSA and pubKey.encScheme set to TPM_ES_RSAESPKCSV15 the TPM SHALL
.088 NOT expect a PAYLOAD_TYPE structure to prepend the decrypted data.
- .089 2. The TPM MUST perform the encryption or decryption in accordance with the
.090 specification of the encryption scheme, as described below.
- .091 3. When a null terminated string is included in a calculation, the terminating null SHALL
.092 NOT be included in the calculation.

.093 **31.1.1 TPM_ES_RSAESOAEP_SHA1_MGF1**

- .094 1. The encryption and decryption MUST be performed using the scheme RSA_ES_OAEP
.095 defined in [PKCS #1v2.0: 7.1] using SHA1 as the hash algorithm for the encoding
.096 operation.
- .097 2. Encryption
 - .098 a. The OAEP encoding P parameter MUST be the 4 character string “TCPA”.
 - .099 b. While the TCG now controls this specification the string value will NOT change to
.100 allow for interoperability and backward compatibility with TCPA 1.1 TPM's

- .101 c. If there is an error with the encryption, the TPM must return the error
.102 TPM_ENCRYPT_ERROR.
- .103 3. Decryption
- .104 a. The OAEP decoding P parameter MUST be the 4 character string “TCPA”.
- .105 b. While the TCG now controls this specification the string value will NOT change to
.106 allow for interoperability and backward compatibility with TCG 1.1 TPM’s
- .107 c. If there is an error with the decryption, the TPM must return the error
.108 TPM_DECRYPT_ERROR.

.109 **31.1.2 TPM_ES_RSAESPKCSV15**

- .110 1. The encryption MUST be performed using the scheme RSA_ES_PKCSV15 defined in
.111 [PKCS #1v2.0: 7.2].
- .112 2. Encryption
- .113 a. If there is an error with the encryption, return the error TPM_ENCRYPT_ERROR.
- .114 3. Decryption
- .115 a. If there is an error with the decryption, return the error TPM_DECRYPT_ERROR.

.116 **31.1.3 TPM_ES_SYM_CNT**

.117 **Start of informative comment**

.118 This defines an encryption mode in use with symmetric algorithms. The actual definition is
.119 at

.120 <http://csrc.nist.gov/publications/nistpubs/800-38a/sp800-38a.pdf>

.121 The underlying symmetric algorithm may be AES128, AES192, AES256 or 3DES. The
.122 definition for these algorithms is in the NIST document Appendix E.

.123 **End of informative comment**

- .124 1. Given a current counter value, the next counter value is obtained by treating the lower
.125 32 bits of the current counter value as an unsigned 32-bit integer x , then replacing the
.126 lower 32 bits of the current counter value with the bits of the incremented integer $(x + 1)$
.127 mod 2^{32} . This method is described in Appendix B.1 of the NIST document
.128 (b=32).30.1.3 TPM_ES_SYM_CNT

.129 **31.1.4 TPM_ES_SYM_OFB**

.130 **Start of informative comment**

.131 This defines an encryption mode in use with symmetric algorithms. The actual definition is
.132 at

.133 <http://csrc.nist.gov/publications/nistpubs/800-38a/sp800-38a.pdf>

.134 The underlying symmetric algorithm may be AES128, AES192, AES256 or 3DES. The
.135 definition for these algorithms is in the NIST document Appendix E.

.136 **End of informative comment**

.137 **31.2 TPM Internal Digital Signatures**

.138 **Start of informative comment**

.139 These values indicate the approved schemes in use by the TPM to generate digital
.140 signatures.

.141 **End of informative comment**

.142

.143 The TPM MUST perform the signature or verification in accordance with the specification of
.144 the signature scheme, as described below.

.145 **31.2.1 TPM_SS_RSASSAPKCS1v15_SHA1**

.146 1. The signature MUST be performed using the scheme RSASSA-PKCS1-v1.5 defined in
.147 [PKCS #1v2.0: 8.1] using SHA1 as the hash algorithm for the encoding operation.

.148 **31.2.2 TPM_SS_RSASSAPKCS1v15_DER**

.149 **Start of informative comment**

.150 This signature scheme is designed to permit inclusion of DER coded information before
.151 signing, which is inappropriate for most TPM capabilities

.152 **End of informative comment**

- .153 1. The signature MUST be performed using the scheme RSASSA-PKCS1-v1.5 defined in
.154 [PKCS #1v2.0: 8.1]. The caller must properly format the area to sign using the DER
.155 rules. The provided area maximum size is k-11 octets.
- .156 2. TPM_Sign SHALL be the only TPM capability that is permitted to use this signature
.157 scheme. If a capability other than TPM_Sign is requested to use this signature scheme,
.158 it SHALL fail with the error code TPM_INAPPROPRIATE_SIG

.159 **31.2.3 TPM_SS_RSASSAPKCS1v15_INFO**

.160 **Start of informative comment**

.161 This signature scheme is designed to permit signatures on arbitrary information but also
.162 protect the signature mechanism from being misused.

.163 **End of informative comment**

- .164 1. The scheme MUST work just as TPM_SS_RSASSAPKCS1V15_SHA1 except in the
.165 TPM_Sign command
- .166 a. In the TPM_Sign command the scheme MUST use a properly constructed
.167 TPM_SIGN_INFO structure, and hash it before signing

.168 **31.2.4 Use of Signature Schemes**

.169 **Start of informative comment**

.170 The PKCS1v15_INFO scheme is a new addition for 1.2. It causes a new functioning for 1.1
.171 and 1.2 keys. The following details the use of the new scheme and how the TPM handles
.172 signatures and hashing

.173 **End of informative comment**

- .174 1. For the commands (TPM_GetAuditDigestSigned, TPM_TickStampBlob,
.175 TPM_ReleaseTransportSigned):
- .176 a. The TPM MUST create a TPM_SIGN_INFO and sign it using the key specified and
.177 TPM_SS_RSASSAPKCS1v15_SHA1
- .178 2. For the commands (TPM_IdentityKey, TPM_Quote and TPM_CertifyKey):
- .179 a. Create the structure as defined by the command and sign using
.180 TPM_SS_RSASSAPKCS1v15_SHA1 for either SHA1 or SIGN_INFO
- .181 3. For TPM_Sign:
- .182 a. Create the structure as defined by the command and key scheme
- .183 b. If key->sigScheme is SHA1 sign the 20 byte parameter
- .184 c. If key->sigScheme is DER, sign the DER value using
.185 TPM_SS_RSASSAPKCS1v15_DER
- .186 d. If key->sigScheme is SIGN_INFO, sign any value using the SIGN_INFO structure and
.187 TPM_SS_RSASSAPKCS1v15_INFO
- .188 4. When data is signed and the data comes from INSIDE the TPM, the TPM is MUST do the
.189 hash, and prepend the DER encoding correctly before performing the padding and
.190 private key operation.
- .191 5. When data is signed and the data comes from OUTSIDE the TPM, the software, not the
.192 TPM, MUST do the hash.
- .193 6. When the TPM knows, or is told by implication, that the hash used is SHA-1, the TPM
.194 MUST prepend the DER encoding correctly before performing the padding and private
.195 key operation
- .196 7. When the TPM does not know, or told by implication, that the hash used is SHA-1, the
.197 software, not the TPM) MUST provide the DER encoding to be prepended.
- .198 8. The TPM MUST perform the padding and private key operation in any signing operations
.199 it does.

.200
.201
.202
.203

32. Key Usage Table

This table summarizes the types of keys associated with a given TPM command. It is the responsibility of each command to check the key usage prior to executing the command

Name	First Key	Second Key	First Key						Second Key							
			SIGNING	STORAGE	IDENTITY	AUTHCHG	BIND	LEGACY	SIGNING	STORAGE	IDENTITY	AUTHCHG	BIND	LEGACY		
TPM_ActivateIdentity	idKey				x											
TPM_CertifyKey	certKey	inKey	x		x			x	x	x			x		x	
TPM_CertifyKey2(Note 3)	inKey	certKey	x	x	x			x	x		x					x
TPM_CertifySelfTest	key		x		x											x
TPM_ChangeAuth	parent	blob		x						2	2	2	2	2	2	
TPM_ChangeAuthAsymFinish	parent	ephemeral		x										x		
TPM_ChangeAuthAsymStart	idKey	ephemeral			x									x		
TPM_CMK_ConvertMigration	parent			x												
TPM_CMK_CreateBlob	parent			x												
TPM_CMK_CreateKey	parent			x												
TPM_ConvertMigrationBlob	parent			x												
TPM_CreateMigrationBlob	parent	blob		x						2	2	2	2	2	2	
TPM_CreateWrapKey	parent			x												
TPM_Delegate_CreateKeyDelegation	key		x	x	x	x	x	x								
TPM_DSAP	entity		x	x	x	x	x	x								
TPM_EstablishTransport	key			x												x
TPM_GetAuditDigestSigned	certKey		x		x											x
TPM_GetAuditEventSigned	certKey		x													x
TPM_GetCapabilitySigned	key		x		x											x
TPM_GetPubKey	key		x	x	x	x	x	x								
TPM_KeyControlOwner	key		x	x	x			x	x							
TPM_LoadKey 2	parent	inKey		x						x	x	x			x	x
TPM_LoadKey	parent	inKey		x						x	x	x			x	x
TPM_MigrateKey	maKey				1											
TPM_OSAP	entity		x	x	x	x	x	x								

TPM_Quote	key	x	x	x
TPM_Quote2	key	x	x	x
TPM_Seal	key		x	
TPM_Sealx	key		x	
TPM_Sign	key	x		x
TPM_UnBind	key			x x
TPM_Unseal	parent		x	
TPM_ReleaseTransport	key	x		
TPM_TickStampBlob	key	x	x	x

:204 **Notes**

:205 1 – Key is not a storage key but TPM_MIGRATE_KEY

:206 2 – TPM unable to determine key type

:207 3 – The order is correct; the reason is to support a single auth version.

.208 **33. Direct Anonymous Attestation**

.209 **Start of informative comment**

.210 TPM_DAA_Join and TPM_DAA_Sign are highly resource intensive commands. They require
.211 most of the internal TPM resources to accomplish the complete set of operations. A TPM
.212 may specify that no other commands are possible during the join or sign operations. To
.213 allow for other operations to occur the TPM does allow the TPM_SaveContext command to
.214 save off the current join or sign operation.

.215 Operations that occur during a join or sign result in the loss of the join or sign session in
.216 favour of the interrupting command.

.217 **End of informative comment**

- .218 1. The TPM MUST support one concurrent TPM_DAA_Join or TPM_DAA_Sign session. The
.219 TPM MAY support additional sessions
- .220 2. The TPM MAY invalidate a join or sign session upon the receipt of any additional
.221 command other than the join/sign or TPM_SaveContext

.222 **33.1 TPM_DAA_JOIN**

.223 **Start of informative comment**

.224 TPM_DAA_Join creates new JOIN data. If a TPM supports only one JOIN/SIGN operation,
.225 TPM_DAA_Join invalidates any previous DAA attestation information inside a TPM. The
.226 JOIN phase of a DAA context requires a TPM to communicate with an issuer.
.227 TPM_DAA_Join outputs data to be sent to an issuing authority and receives data from that
.228 issuing authority. The operation potentially requires several seconds to complete, but is
.229 done in a series of atomic stages and TPM_SaveContext/RestoreContext can be used to
.230 cache data off-TPM in between atomic stages.

.231 The JOIN process is designed so a TPM will normally receive exactly the same DAA
.232 credentials from a given issuer, no matter how many times the JOIN process is executed
.233 and no matter whether the issuer changes his keys. This property is necessary because an
.234 issuer must give DAA credentials to a platform after verifying that the platform has the
.235 architecture of a trusted platform. Unless the issuer repeats the verification process, there
.236 is no justification for giving different DAA credentials to the same platform. Even after
.237 repeating the verification process, the issuer should give replacement (different) DAA
.238 credentials only when it is necessary to retire the old DAA credentials. Replacement DAA
.239 credentials erase the previous DAA history of the platform, at least as far as the DAA
.240 credentials from that issuer are concerned. Replacement might be desirable, as when a
.241 platform changes hands, for example, in order to eliminate any association via DAA between
.242 the seller and the buyer. On the other hand, replacement might be undesirable, since it
.243 enables a rogue to rejoin a community from which he has been barred. Replacement is done
.244 by submitting a different “count” value to the TPM during a JOIN process. A platform may
.245 use any value of “count” at any time, in any order, but only “counts” accepted by the issuer
.246 will elicit DAA credentials from that issuer.

.247 The TPM is forced to verify an issuer’s public parameters before using an issuer’s public
.248 parameters. This verification provides proof that the public parameters (which include a
.249 public key) were approved by an entity that knows the private key corresponding to that
.250 public key; in other words that the JOIN has previously been approved by the issuer. This

.251 verification is necessary to prevent an attack by a rogue using a genuine issuer's public
.252 parameters, which could reveal the secret created by the TPM using those public
.253 parameters. Verification uses a signature (provided by the issuer) over the public
.254 parameters.

.255 The exponent of the issuer's key is fixed at $2^{16}+1$, because this is the only size of exponent
.256 that a TPM is required to support. The modulus of the issuer's public key is used to create
.257 the pseudonym with which the TPM contacts the issuer. Hence the TPM cannot produce the
.258 same pseudonym for different issuers (who have different keys). The pseudonym is always
.259 created using the issuer's first key, even if the issuer changes keys, in order to produce the
.260 property described earlier. The issuer proves to the TPM that he has the right to use that
.261 first key to create a pseudonym by creating a chain of signatures from the first key to the
.262 current key, and submitting those signatures to the TPM. The method has the desirable
.263 property that only signatures and the most recent private key need be retained by the
.264 issuer: once the latest link in the signature chain has been created, previous private keys
.265 can be discarded.

.266 The use of atomic operations minimises the contiguous time that a TPM is busy with
.267 TPM_DAA_Join and hence unavailable for other commands. JOIN can therefore be done as
.268 a background activity without inconveniencing a user. The use of atomic operations also
.269 minimises the peak value of TPM resources consumed by the JOIN phase.

.270 The use of atomic operations introduces a need for consistency checks, to ensure that the
.271 same parameters are used in all atomic operations of the same JOIN process.
.272 DAA_tpmSpecific therefore contains a digest of the associated DAA_issuerSettings
.273 structure, and DAA_session contains a digest of associated DAA_tpmSpecific and
.274 DAA_joinSession structures. Each atomic operation verifies digests to ensure use of
.275 mutually consistent sets of DAA_issuerSettings, DAA_tpmSpecific, DAA_session, and
.276 DAA_joinSession data.

.277 JOIN operations and data structures are designed to minimise the amount of data that
.278 must be stored on a TPM in between atomic operations, while ensuring use of mutually
.279 consistent sets of data. Digests of public data are held in the TPM between atomic
.280 operations, instead of the actual public data (if a digest is smaller than the actual data). In
.281 each atomic operation, consistency checks verify that any public data loaded and used in
.282 that operation matches the stored digest. Thus non-secret DAA_generic_X parameters
.283 (loaded into the TPM only when required), are checked using digests DAA_digest_X
.284 (preloaded into the TPM in the structure DAA_issuerSettings).

.285 JOIN includes a challenge from the issuer, in order to defeat simple Denial of Service
.286 attacks on the issuer's server by rogues pretending to be arbitrary TPMs.

.287 A first group of atomic operations generate all TPM-data that must be sent to the issuer.
.288 The platform performs other operations (that do not need to be trusted) using the TPM-data,
.289 and sends the resultant data to the issuer. The issuer sends values u2 and u3 back to the
.290 TPM. A second group of atomic operations accepts this data from the issuer and completes
.291 the protocol.

.292 The TPM outputs encrypted forms of DAA_tpmSpecific, v0 and v1. These encrypted data are
.293 later interpreted by the same TPM and not by any other entity, so any manufacturer-
.294 specific wrapping can be used. It is suggested, however, that enc(DAA_tpmSpecific) or
.295 enc(v0) or enc(v1) data should be created by adapting a TPM_CONTEXT_BLOB structure.

.296 After executing TPM_DAA_Join, it is prudent to perform TPM_DAA_Sign, to verify that the
.297 JOIN process completed correctly. A host platform may choose to verify JOIN by performing
.298 TPM_DAA_Sign as both the target and the verifier (or could, of course, use an external
.299 verifier).

.300 **End of informative comment**

.301 **33.2 TPM_DAA_Sign**

.302 **Start of informative comment**

.303 TPM_DAA_Sign responds to a challenge and proves the attestation held by a TPM without
.304 revealing the attestation held by that TPM. The operation is done in a series of atomic
.305 stages to minimise the contiguous time that a TPM is busy and hence unavailable for other
.306 commands. TPM_SaveContext can be used to save a DAA context in between atomic stages.
.307 This enables the response to the challenge to be done as a background activity without
.308 inconveniencing a user, and also minimises the peak value of TPM resources consumed by
.309 the process.

.310 The use of atomic operations introduces a need for consistency checks, to ensure that the
.311 same parameters are used in all atomic operations of the same SIGN process.
.312 DAA_tpmSpecific therefore contains a digest of the associated DAA_issuerSettings
.313 structure, and DAA_session contains a digest of associated DAA_tpmSpecific structure.
.314 Each atomic operation verifies these digests and hence ensures use of mutually consistent
.315 sets of DAA_issuerSettings, DAA_tpmSpecific, and DAA_session data.

.316 SIGN operations and data structures are designed to minimise the amount of data that
.317 must be stored on a TPM in between atomic operations, while ensuring use of mutually
.318 consistent sets of data. Digests of public and private data are held in the TPM between
.319 atomic operations, instead of the actual public or private data (if a digest is smaller than the
.320 actual data). At each atomic operation, consistency checks verify that any data loaded and
.321 used in that operation matches the stored digest. Thus parameters DAA_digest_X are
.322 digests (preloaded into the TPM in the structure DAA_issuerSettings) of non-secret
.323 DAA_generic_X parameters (loaded into the TPM only when required), for example.

.324 The design enables the use of any number of issuer DAA-data, private DAA-data, and so on.
.325 Strictly, the design is that the *TPM* puts no limit on the number of sets of issuer DAA-data
.326 or sets of private DAA-data, or restricts what set is in the TPM at any time, but supports
.327 only one DAA-context in the TPM at any instant. Any number of DAA-contexts can, of
.328 course, be swapped in and out of the TPM using saveContext /loadContext, so applications
.329 do not perceive a limit on the number of DAA-contexts.

.330 TPM_DAA_Sign accepts a freshness challenge from the verifier and generate all TPM-data
.331 that must be sent to the verifier. The platform performs other operations (that do not need
.332 to be trusted) using the TPM-data, and sends the resultant data to the verifier. At one stage,
.333 the TPM incorporates a loaded public (non-migratable) key into the protocol. This is
.334 intended to permit the setup of a session, for any specific purpose, including doing the
.335 same job in TPM_ActivateIdentity as the EK.

.336 **End of informative comment**

.337 **33.3 DAA Command summary**

.338 **Start of informative comment**

.339 The following is a conceptual summary of the operations that are necessary to setup a TPM
.340 for DAA, execute the JOIN process, and execute the SIGN process.

.341 The summary is partitioned according to the “stages” of the actual TPM commands. Thus
.342 the operations listed in JOIN under stage-2 briefly describe the operation of TPM_DAA_Join
.343 at stage-2, for example.

.344 This summary is in place to help in the connection between the mathematical definition of
.345 DAA and this implementation in a TPM.

.346 **End of informative comment**

.347 **33.3.1 TPM setup**

.348 1. A TPM generates a TPM-specific secret S (160-bit) from the RNG and stores S in
.349 nonvolatile store on the TPM. This value will never be disclosed and changed by the
.350 TPM.

.351 **33.3.2 JOIN**

.352 **Start of informative comment**

.353 This entire section is informative

.354 1. When the following is performed, this process does not increment the stage counter.

.355 a. TPM imports a non-secret values n0 (2048-bit).

.356 b. TPM computes a non-secret value N0 (160-bit) = H(n0).

.357 c. TPM computes a TPM-specific secret DAA_rekey (160-bit) = H(S, H(n0)).

.358 d. TPM stores a self-consistent set of (N0, DAA_rekey)

.359 2. The following is performed 0 or several times: (Note: If the stage mechanism is being
.360 used, then this branch does not increment the stage counter.)

.361 a. TPM imports

.362 i. a self consistent set of (N0, DAA_rekey)

.363 ii. a non-secret value DAA_SEED_KEY (2048-bit)

.364 iii. a non-secret value DEPENDENT_SEED_KEY (2048-bit)

.365 iv. a non-secret value SIG_DSK (2048-bit)

.366 b. TPM computes DIGEST (160-bit) = H(DAA_SEED_KEY)

.367 c. If DIGEST != N0, TPM refuses to continue

.368 d. If DIGEST == N0, TPM verifies validity of signature SIG_DSK on
.369 DEPENDENT_SEED_KEY with key (DAA_SEED_KEY, e0 (= 2¹⁶ + 1)) by using
.370 TPM_Sign_Verify (based on PKCS#1 2.0). If check fails, TPM refuses to continue.

.371 e. TPM sets N0 = H(DEPENDENT_SEED_KEY)

.372 f. TPM stores a self consistent set of (N0, DAA_JOIN)

.373 3. Stage 2

.374 a. TPM imports a set of values, including

- .375 i. a non-secret value n_0 (2048-bit),
- .376 ii. a non-secret value R_0 (2048-bit),
- .377 iii. a non-secret value R_1 (2048-bit),
- .378 iv. a non-secret value S_0 (2048-bit),
- .379 v. a non-secret value S_1 (2048-bit),
- .380 vi. a non-secret value n (2048-bit),
- .381 vii. a non-secret value n_1 (1024-bit),
- .382 viii. a non-secret value γ (2048-bit),
- .383 ix. a non-secret value q (208-bit),
- .384 x. a non-secret value COUNT (8-bit),
- .385 xi. a self consistent set of $(N_0, \text{DAA_rekey})$.
- .386 xii. TPM saves them as part of a new set A.
- .387 b. TPM computes DIGEST (160-bit) = $H(n_0)$
- .388 c. If $\text{DIGEST} \neq N_0$, TPM refuses to continue.
- .389 d. If $\text{DIGEST} == N_0$, TPM computes DIGEST (160-bit) = $H(R_0, R_1, S_0, S_1, n, n_1, \gamma, q)$
- .390 e. TPM imports a non-secret value SIG_ISSUER_KEY (2048-bit).
- .391 f. TPM verifies validity of signature SIG_ISSUER_KEY (2048-bit) on DIGEST with key (n_0, e_0) by using TPM_Sign_Verify (based on PKCS#1 2.0). If check fails, TPM refuses to continue.
- .392
- .393
- .394 g. TPM computes a TPM-specific secret f (208-bit) = $H(\text{DAA_rekey}, \text{COUNT}, 0) \parallel H(\text{DAA_rekey}, \text{COUNT}, 1) \bmod q$.
- .395
- .396 h. TPM computes a TPM-specific secret f_0 (104-bit) = $f \bmod 2^{104}$.
- .397 i. TPM computes a TPM-specific secret f_1 (104-bit) = $f \gg 104$.
- .398 j. TPM save f, f_0 and f_1 as part of set A.
- .399 4. Stage 3
- .400 a. TPM generates a TPM-specific secret u_0 (1024-bit) from the RNG.
- .401 b. TPM generates a TPM-specific secret u'_1 (1104-bit) from the RNG.
- .402 c. TPM computes u_1 (1024-bit) = $u'_1 \bmod n_1$.
- .403 d. TPM stores u_0 and u_1 as part of set A.
- .404 5. Stage 4
- .405 a. TPM computes a non-secret value P_1 (2048-bit) = $(R_0^{f_0}) \bmod n$ and stores P_1 as part of set A.
- .406
- .407 6. Stage 5
- .408 a. TPM computes a non-secret value P_2 (2048-bit) = $P_1 \cdot (R_1^{f_1}) \bmod n$, stores P_2 as part of set A and erases P_1 from set A.
- .409
- .410 7. Stage 6

- .411 a. TPM computes a non-secret value $P3$ (2048-bit) = $P2*(S0^{u0}) \bmod n$, stores $P3$ as part of
.412 set A and erases $P2$ from set A.
- .413 8. Stage 7
- .414 a. TPM computes a non-secret value U (2048-bit) = $P3*(S1^{u1}) \bmod n$.
- .415 b. TPM erases $P3$ from set A
- .416 c. TPM computes and saves $U1$ (160-bit) = $H(U || COUNT || N0)$ as part of set A.
- .417 d. TPM exports U .
- .418 9. Stage 8
- .419 a. TPM imports ENC_NE (2048-bit).
- .420 b. TPM decrypts NE (160-bit) from ENC_NE (2048-bit) by using $privEK$: $NE =$
.421 $decrypt(privEK, ENC_NE)$.
- .422 c. TPM computes $U2$ (160-bit) = $H(U1 || NE)$.
- .423 d. TPM erases $U1$ from set A.
- .424 e. TPM exports $U2$.
- .425 10. Stage 9
- .426 a. TPM generates a TPM-specific secret $r0$ (344-bit) from the RNG.
- .427 b. TPM generates a TPM-specific secret $r1$ (344-bit) from the RNG.
- .428 c. TPM generates a TPM-specific secret $r2$ (1024-bit) from the RNG.
- .429 d. TPM generates a TPM-specific secret $r3$ (1264-bit) from the RNG.
- .430 e. TPM stores $r0, r1, r2, r3$ as part of set A.
- .431 f. TPM computes a non-secret value $P1$ (2048-bit) = $(R0^{r0}) \bmod n$ and stores $P1$ as part of
.432 set A.
- .433 11. Stage 10
- .434 a. TPM computes a non-secret value $P2$ (2048-bit) = $P1*(R1^{r1}) \bmod n$, stores $P2$ as part of
.435 set A and erases $P1$ from set A.
- .436 12. Stage 11
- .437 a. TPM computes a non-secret value $P3$ (2048-bit) = $P2*(S0^{r2}) \bmod n$, stores $P3$ as part of
.438 set A and erases $P2$ from set A.
- .439 13. Stage 12
- .440 a. TPM computes a non-secret value $P4$ (2048-bit) = $P3*(S1^{r3}) \bmod n$, stores $P4$ as part of
.441 set A and erases $P3$ from set A.
- .442 b. TPM exports $P4$.
- .443 14. Stage 13
- .444 a. TPM imports w (2048-bit).
- .445 b. TPM computes $w1 = w^q \bmod G$.
- .446 c. TPM verifies if $w1 = 1$ holds. If it doesn't hold, TPM refuses to continue.

- .447 d. If it does hold, TPM saves w as part of set A.
- .448 15.Stage 14
- .449 a. TPM computes a non-secret value E (2048-bit) = $w^f \bmod G$.
- .450 b. TPM exports E .
- .451 16.Stage 15
- .452 a. TPM computes a TPM-specific secret r (208-bit) = $r_0 + 2^{104}r_1 \bmod q$.
- .453 b. TPM computes a non-secret value E_1 (2048-bit) = $w^r \bmod G$.
- .454 c. TPM exports E_1 and erases w from set A.
- .455 17.Stage 16
- .456 a. TPM imports a non-secret value c_1 (160-bit).
- .457 b. TPM generates a non-secret value NT (160-bit) from the RNG.
- .458 c. TPM computes a non-secret value c (160-bit) = $H(c_1 || NT)$.
- .459 d. TPM save c as part of set A.
- .460 e. TPM exports NT
- .461 18.Stage 17
- .462 a. TPM computes a non-secret value s_0 (352-bit) = $r_0 + c^f_0$ over the integers.
- .463 b. TPM exports s_0 .
- .464 19.Stage 18
- .465 a. TPM computes a non-secret value s_1 (352-bit) = $r_1 + c^f_1$ over the integers.
- .466 b. TPM exports s_1 .
- .467 20.Stage 19
- .468 a. TPM computes a non-secret value s_2 (1024-bit) = $r_2 + c^*u_0 \bmod 2^{1024}$.
- .469 b. TPM exports s_2 .
- .470 21.Stage 20
- .471 a. TPM computes a non-secret value s'_2 (1024-bit) = $(r_2 + c^*u_0) \gg 1024$ over the integers.
- .472 b. TPM saves s'_2 as part of set A.
- .473 c. TPM exports c
- .474 22.Stage 21
- .475 a. TPM computes a non-secret value s_3 (1272-bit) = $r_3 + cu_1 + s'_2$ over the integers.
- .476 b. TPM exports s_3 and erases s'_2 from set A.
- .477 23.Stage 22
- .478 a. TPM imports a non-secret value u_2 (1024-bit).
- .479 b. TPM computes a TPM-specific secret v_0 (1024-bit) = $u_2 + u_0 \bmod 2^{1024}$.
- .480 c. TPM stores v_0 as part of A.

.481 d. TPM computes a TPM-specific secret $v'0$ (1024-bit) = $(u2 + u0) \gg 1024$ over the integers.

.482 e. TPM saves $v'0$ as part of set A.

.483 24.Stage 23

.484 a. TPM imports a non-secret value $u3$ (1512-bit).

.485 b. TPM computes a TPM-specific secret $v1$ (1520-bit) = $u3 + u1 + v'0$ over the integers.

.486 c. TPM stores $v1$ as part of A.

.487 d. TPM erases $v'0$ from set A.

.488 25.Stage 24

.489 a. TPM makes self consistent set of all the data ($n0$, COUNT, R0, R1, S0, S1, n, G, q, $v0$,
.490 $v1$), where the values $v0$, $v1$ are secret – they need to be stored safely with the consistent
.491 set, and the remaining is non-secret.

.492 b. TPM erases set A.

.493 **End of informative comment**

.494 **33.3.3 SIGN**

.495 **Start of informative comment**

.496 This entire section is informative

.497 1. Stage 0 & 1

.498 a. TPM imports and verifies a self consistent set of all the data including:

.499 i. $n0$ (2048-bit),

.500 ii. COUNT (8-bit),

.501 iii. R0 (2048-bit),

.502 iv. R1 (2048-bit),

.503 v. S0 (2048-bit),

.504 vi. S1 (2048-bit),

.505 vii. n (2048-bit),

.506 viii. γ (2048-bit),

.507 ix. q (208-bit),

.508 x. $v0$ (1024-bit),

.509 xi. $v1$ (1520-bit).

.510 xii. If the verification does not succeed, TPM refuses to continue.

.511 b. TPM stores the above values as part of a new set A.

.512 c. TPM computes a TPM-specific secret $f0$ (104-bit) = $f \bmod 2104$.

.513 d. TPM computes a TPM-specific secret $f1$ (104-bit) = $f \gg 104$.

.514 e. TPM stores $f0$ and $f1$ as part of set A.

- .515 f. TPM generates a TPM-specific secret r_0 (344-bit) from the RNG.
- .516 g. TPM generates a TPM-specific secret r_1 (344-bit) from the RNG.
- .517 h. TPM generates a TPM-specific secret r_2 (1024-bit) from the RNG.
- .518 i. TPM generates a TPM-specific secret r_4 (1752-bit) from the RNG.
- .519 j. TPM stores r_0 , r_1 , r_2 , r_4 , as part of set A.
- .520 2. Stage 2
- .521 a. TPM computes a non-secret value P_1 (2048-bit) = $(R_0^{r_0}) \bmod n$ and stores P_1 as part of
- .522 set A.
- .523 3. Stage 3
- .524 a. TPM computes a non-secret value P_2 (2048-bit) = $P_1 \cdot (R_1^{r_1}) \bmod n$, stores P_2 as part of
- .525 set A and erases P_1 from set A.
- .526 4. Stage 4
- .527 a. TPM computes a non-secret value P_3 (2048-bit) = $P_2 \cdot (S_0^{r_2}) \bmod n$, stores P_3 as part of
- .528 set A and erases P_2 from set A.
- .529 5. Stage 5
- .530 a. TPM computes a non-secret value T (2048-bit) = $P_3 \cdot (S_1^{r_4}) \bmod n$.
- .531 b. TPM erases P_3 from set A.
- .532 c. TPM exports T .
- .533 6. Stage 6
- .534 a. TPM imports a non-secret value w (2048-bit).
- .535 b. TPM computes $w_1 = w^q \bmod G$.
- .536 c. TPM verifies if $w_1 = 1$ holds. If it doesn't hold, TPM refuses to continue.
- .537 d. If it does hold, TPM saves w as part of set A.
- .538 7. Stage 7
- .539 a. TPM computes a non-secret value E (2048-bit) = $w^f \bmod G$.
- .540 b. TPM exports E and erases f from set A.
- .541 8. Stage 8
- .542 a. TPM computes a TPM-specific secret r (208-bit) = $r_0 + 2^{104} \cdot r_1 \bmod q$.
- .543 b. TPM computes a non-secret value E_1 (2048-bit) = $w^r \bmod G$.
- .544 c. TPM exports E_1 and erases w and E_1 from set A.
- .545 9. Stage 9
- .546 a. TPM imports a non-secret value c_1 (160-bit).
- .547 b. TPM generates a non-secret value NT (160-bit) from the RNG.
- .548 c. TPM computes a non-secret value c_2 (160-bit) = $H(c_1 || NT)$ and erases c_1 from set A.
- .549 d. TPM saves c_2 as part of set A.

- .550 e. TPM exports NT.
- .551 10.Stage 10
- .552 a. TPM imports a non-secret value b (1-bit).
- .553 b. If $b = 1$, TPM imports a non-secret value m (160-bit).
- .554 c. TPM computes a non-secret value c (160-bit) = $H(c2 || b || m)$ and erases $c2$ from set A.
- .555 d. If $b = 0$, TPM imports an RSA public key, $eAIK$ ($= 2^{16} + 1$) and $nAIK$ (2048-bit).
- .556 e. TPM computes a non-secret value c (160-bit) = $H(c2 || b || nAIK)$ and erases $c2$ from set
.557 A.
- .558 f. TPM exports c .
- .559 11.Stage 11
- .560 a. TPM computes a non-secret value $s0$ (352-bit) = $r0 + c*f0$ over the integers.
- .561 b. TPM exports $s0$.
- .562 12.Stage 12
- .563 a. TPM computes a non-secret value $s1$ (352-bit) = $r1 + c*f1$ over the integers.
- .564 b. TPM exports $s1$.
- .565 13.Stage 13
- .566 a. TPM computes a non-secret value $s2$ (1024-bit) = $r2 + c*v0 \bmod 2^{1024}$.
- .567 b. TPM exports $s2$.
- .568 14.Stage 14
- .569 a. TPM computes a non-secret value $s'2$ (1024-bit) = $(r2 + c*v0) \gg 1024$ over the integers.
- .570 b. TPM saves $s'2$ as part of set A.
- .571 15.Stage 15
- .572 a. TPM computes a non-secret value $s3$ (1760-bit) = $r4 + cv1 + s'2$ over the integers.
- .573 b. TPM exports $s3$ and erases $s'2$ from set A.
- .574 c. TPM erases set A.
- .575 **End of informative comment**

.576 **34. General Purpose IO**

.577 **Start of informative comment**

.578 The GPIO capability allows an outside entity to output a signal on a GPIO pin, or read the
.579 status of a GPIO pin. The solution is for a single pin, with no timing information. There is
.580 no support for sending information on specific busses like SMBus or RS232. The design
.581 does support the designation of more than one GPIO pin.

.582 There is no requirement as to the layout of the GPIO pin, or the routing of the wire from the
.583 GPIO pin on the platform. A platform specific specification can add those requirements.

.584 To avoid the designation of additional command ordinals, the architecture uses the NV
.585 Storage commands. A set of GPIO NV indexes map to individual GPIO pins.
.586 TPM_NV_INDEX_GPIO_00 maps to the first GPIO pin. The platform specific specification
.587 indicates the mapping of GPIO zero to a specific package pin.

.588 The TPM does not reserve any NV storage for the indicated pin; rather the TPM uses the
.589 authorization mechanisms for NV storage to allow a rich set of controls on the use of the
.590 GPIO pin. The TPM owner can specify when and how the platform can use the GPIO pin.
.591 While there is no NV storage for the pin value, TRUE or FALSE, there is NV storage for the
.592 authorization requirements for the pin.

.593 Using the NV attributes the GPIO pin may be either an input pin or an output pin.

.594 **End of informative comment**

- .595 1. The TPM MAY support the use of a GPIO pin defined by the NV storage mechanisms.
- .596 2. The GPIO pin MAY be either an input or an output pin.

.597 **35. Redirection**

.598 **Informative comment**

.599 Redirection allows the TPM to output the results of operations to hardware other than the
.600 normal TPM communication bus. The redirection can occur to areas internal or external to
.601 the TPM. Redirection is only available to key operations (such as TPM_UnBind,
.602 TPM_Unseal, and TPM_GetPubKey). To use redirection the key must be created specifying
.603 redirection as one of the keys attributes.

.604 When redirecting the output the TPM will not interpret any of the data and will pass the
.605 data on without any modifications.

.606 The TPM_SetRedirection command connects a destination location or port to a loaded key.
.607 This connection remains so long as the key is loaded, and is saved along with other key
.608 information on a saveContext(key), loadContext(key). If the key is reloaded using
.609 TPM_LoadKey, then TPM_SetRedirection must be run again.

.610 Any use of TPM_SetRedirection with a key that does not have the redirect attribute must
.611 return an error. Use of key that has the redirect attribute without TPM_SetRedirection being
.612 set must return an error.

.613 **End of informative comments**

- .614 1. The TPM MAY support redirection
- .615 2. If supported, the TPM MUST only use redirection on keys that have the redirect attribute
.616 set
- .617 3. A key that is tagged as a “redirect” key MUST be a leaf key in the TPM Protected Storage
.618 blob hierarchy. A key that is tagged as a “redirect” key CAN NEVER be a parent key.
- .619 4. Output data that is the result of a cryptographic operation using the private portion of a
.620 “redirect” key:
 - .621 a. MUST be passed to an alternate output channel
 - .622 b. MUST NOT be passed to the normal output channel
 - .623 c. MUST NOT be interpreted by the TPM
- .624 5. When command input or output is redirected the TPM MUST respond to the command
.625 as soon as the ordinal finishes processing
 - .626 a. The TPM MUST indicate to any subsequent commands that the TPM is busy and
.627 unable to accept additional command until the redirection is complete
 - .628 b. The TPM MUST allow for the resetting of the redirection channel
- .629 6. Redirection MUST be available for the following commands:
 - .630 a. TPM_Unseal
 - .631 b. TPM_UnBind
 - .632 c. TPM_GetPubKey
 - .633 d. TPM_Seal
 - .634 e. TPM_Quote

.635 **36. Structure Versioning**

.636 **Start of informative comment**

.637 In version 1.1 some structures also contained a version indicator. The TPM set the indicator
.638 to indicate the version of the TPM that was creating the structure. This was incorrect
.639 behavior. The functionality of determining the version of a structure is radically different in
.640 1.2.

.641 Most structures will contain a TPM_STRUCTURE_TAG. All future structures must contain
.642 the tag, the only structures that do not contain the tag are 1.1 structures that are not
.643 modified in 1.2. This restriction keeps backwards compatibility with 1.1.

.644 Any 1.2 structure must not contain a 1.1 tagged structure. For instance the TPM_KEY
.645 complex, if set at 1.2, must not contain a PCR_INFO structure. The TPM_KEY 1.2 structure
.646 must contain a PCR_INFO_LONG structure. The converse is also true 1.1 structures must
.647 not contain any 1.2 structures.

.648 The TPM must not allow the creation of any mixed structures. This implies that a command
.649 that deals with keys, for instance, must ensure that a complete 1.1 or 1.2 structure is
.650 properly built and validated on the creation and use of the key.

.651 The tag structure is set as a UINT16. This allows for a reasonable number of structures
.652 without wasting space in the buffers.

.653 To obtain the current TPM version the caller must use the TPM_GetCapability command.

.654 The tag is not a complete validation of the validity of a structure. The tag provides a
.655 reference for the structure and the TPM or caller is responsible for determining the validity
.656 of any remaining fields. For instance, in the TPM_KEY structure the tag would indicate
.657 TPM_KEY but the TPM would still use tpmProof and the various digests to ensure the
.658 structure integrity.

.659 7. Compatibility and notification

.660 In 1.1 TPM_CAP_VERSION (index 19) returned a version structure with 1.1.x.x. The x.x was
.661 for manufacturer information and the x.x also was set version structures. In 1.2
.662 TPM_CAP_VERSION will return 1.1.0.0. Any 1.2 structure that uses the version information
.663 will set the x.x to 0.0 in the structure. TPM_CAP_MANUFACTURER_VER (index 21) will
.664 return 1.2.x.x. The 1.2 structures do not contain the version structure. The rationale
.665 behind this is that the structure tag will indicate the version of the structure. So changing a
.666 correct structure will result in a new tag and there is no need for a separate version
.667 structure.

.668 For further compatibility the quote function always returns 1.1.0.0 in the version
.669 information regardless of the size of the incoming structure. All other functions may regard
.670 a 2 byte sizeofselect structure as indicative of a 1.1 structure. The TPM handles all of the
.671 structures according to the input, the only exception being TPM_CertifyKey where the TPM
.672 does not need to keep the input version of the structure.

.673 **End of informative comment**

- .674 1. The TPM MUST support 1.1 and 1.2 defined structures
- .675 2. The TPM MUST ensure that 1.1 and 1.2 structures are not mixed in the same overall
.676 structure

- .677 a. For instance in the TPM_KEY structure if the structure is 1.1 then PCR_INFO MUST
- .678 be set and if 1.2 the PCR_INFO_LONG structure must be set
- .679 3. On input the TPM MUST ignore the lower two bytes of the version structure
- .680 4. On output the TPM MUST set the lower two bytes to 0 of the version structure

.681 **37. Certified Migration Key Type**

.682 **Start of informative comment**

.683 In version 1.1 there were two key types, non-migration and migration keys. The TPM would
.684 only certify non-migrating keys. There is a need for a key that allows migration but allows
.685 for certification. This proposal is to create a key that allows for migration but still has
.686 properties that the TPM can certify.

.687 These new keys are “certifiable migratable keys” or CMK. This designation is to separate the
.688 keys from either the normal migration or non-migration types of keys. The TPM Owner is
.689 not required to use these keys.

.690 Two entities may participate in the CMK process. The first is the Migration-Selection
.691 Authority and the second is the Migration Authority (MA).

.692 **Migration Selection Authority (MSA)**

.693 The MSA controls the migration of the key but does not handle the migrated itself.

.694 **Migration Authority (MA)**

.695 A Migration Authority actually handles the migrated key.

.696 **Use of MSA and MA**

.697 Migration of a CMK occurs using TPM_CMK_CreateBlob (TPM_CreateMigrationBlob cannot
.698 be used). The TPM Owner authorizes the migration destination (as usual), and the key
.699 owner authorizes the migration transformation (as usual). An MSA authorizes the migration
.700 destination as well. If the MSA is the migration destination, no MSA authorization is
.701 required.

.702 **End of informative comment**

.703 **37.1 Certified Migration Requirements**

.704 **Start of informative comment**

.705 The following list details the design requirements for the controlled migration keys

.706 **Key Protections**

.707 The key must be protected by hardware and an entity trusted by the key user.

.708 **Key Certification**

.709 The TPM must provide a mechanism to provide certification of the key protections (both
.710 hardware and trusted entity)

.711 **Owner Control**

.712 The TPM Owner must control the selection of the trusted entity

.713 **Control Delegation**

.714 The TPM Owner may delegate the ability to create the keys but the decision must be explicit

.715 **Linkage**

.716 The architecture must not require linking the trusted entity and the key user

.717 **Key Type**

:718 The key may be any type of migratable key (storage or signing)

:719 **Interaction**

:720 There must be no required interaction between the trusted entity and the TPM during the
:721 key creation process

:722 **End of informative comment**

:723 **37.2 Key Creation**

:724 **Start of informative comment**

:725 The command TPM_CMK_CreateKey creates a CMK where control of the migration is by a
:726 MSA or MA. The process uses the MSA public key (actually a digest of the MA public key) as
:727 input to TPM_CMK_CreateKey. The key creation process establishes a migrationAuth that is
:728 SHA-1(tpmProof || SHA-1(MA pubkey) || SHA-1(source pubkey)).

:729 The use of tpmProof is essential to prove that CMK creation occurs on a TPM. The use of
:730 “source pubkey” explicitly links a migration AuthData value to a particular public key, to
:731 simplify verification that a specific key is being migrated.

:732 **End of informative comment**

:733 **37.3 Migrate CMK to a MA**

:734 **Start of informative comment**

:735 Migration of a CMK to a destination other than the MSA:

:736 **TPM_MIGRATIONKEYAUTH Creation**

:737 The TPM Owner authorizes the creation of a TPM_MIGRATIONKEYAUTH structure using
:738 TPM_AuthorizeMigrationKey command. The structure contains the destination
:739 migrationKey, the migrationScheme (which must be set to TPM_MS_RESTRICT_APPROVE
:740 or TPM_MS_RESTRICT_APPROVE_DOUBLE) and a digest of tpmProof.

:741 **MA Approval**

:742 The MA signs a TPM_CMK_AUTH structure, which contains the digest of the MA public key,
:743 the digest of the destination (or parent) public key and a digest of the public portion of the
:744 key to be migrated

:745 **TPM Owner Authorization**

:746 The TPM Owner authorizes the MA approval using TPM_CMK_CreateTicket and produces a
:747 signature ticket

:748 **Key Owner Authorization**

:749 The CMK owner passes the TPM Owner MA authorization, the MSA Approval and the
:750 signature ticket to the TPM_CMK_CreateBlob using the key owners authorization.

:751 Thus the TPM owner, the key’s owner, and the MSA, all cooperate to migrate a key
:752 produced by TPM_CMK_CreateBlob.

:753 **End of informative comment**

:754 **37.4 Migrate CMK to a MSA**

:755 **Start of informative comment**

:756 Migrate CMK directly to a MSA

:757 **TPM_MIGRATIONKEYAUTH Creation**

:758 The TPM Owner authorizes the creation of a TPM_MIGRATIONKEYAUTH structure using
:759 TPM_AuthorizeMigrationKey command. The structure contains the destination
:760 migrationKey (which must be the MSA public key), the migrationScheme (which must be set
:761 to TPM_MS_RESTRICT_MIGRATE) and a digest of tpmProof.

:762 **Key Owner Authorization**

:763 The CMK owner passes the TPM_MIGRATIONKEYAUTH to the TPM in a
:764 TPM_CMK_CreateBlob using the CMK owner authorization.

:765 **Double Wrap**

:766 If specified, through the MS_MIGRATE scheme, the TPM double wraps the CMK information
:767 such that the only way a recipient can unwrap the key is with the cooperation of the CMK
:768 owner.

:769 **Proof of Control**

:770 To prove to the MA and to a third party that migration of a key is under MSA control, a
:771 caller passes the MA's public key (actually its digest) to TPM_CertifyKey, to create a
:772 TPM_CERTIFY_INFO structure. This now contains a digest of the MA's public key.

:773 A CMK be produced without cooperation from the MA: the caller merely provides the MSA's
:774 public key. When the restricted key is to be migrated, the public key of the intended
:775 destination, plus the CERTIFY_INFO structure are sent to the MSA. The MSA extracts the
:776 migrationAuthority digest from the CERTIFY_INFO structure, verifies that
:777 migrationAuthority corresponds to the MSA's public key, creates and signs a
:778 TPM_RESTRICTEDKEYAUTH structure, and sends that signature back to the caller. Thus
:779 the MSA never needs to touch the actual migrated data.

:780 **End of informative comment**

:781 **38. Revoke Trust**

:782 **Start of informative comment**

:783 There are circumstances where clearing all keys and values within the TPM is either
:784 desirable or necessary. These circumstances may involve both security and privacy
:785 concerns.

:786 Platform trust is demonstrated using the EK Credential, Platform Credential and the
:787 Conformance Credentials. There is a direct and cryptograph relationship between the EK
:788 and the EK Credential and the Platform Credential. The EK and Platform credentials can
:789 only demonstrate platform trust when they can be validated by the Endorsement Key.

:790 This command is called revoke trust because by deleting the EK, the EK Credential and the
:791 Platform Credential are dissociated from platform therefore invalidating them resulting in
:792 the revocation of the trust in the platform. From a trust perspective, the platform associated
:793 with these specific credentials no longer exists. However, any transaction that occurred
:794 prior to invoking this command will remain valid and trusted to the same extent they would
:795 be valid and trusted if the platform were physically destroyed.

:796 This is a non-reversible function. Also, along with the EK, the Owner is also deleted
:797 removing all non-migratable keys and owner-specified state.

:798 It is possible to establish new trust in the platform by creating a new EK using the
:799 TPM_CreateRevocableEK command. (It is not possible to create an EK using the
:800 TPM_CreateEndorsementKeyPair because that command is not allowed if the revoke trust
:801 command is allowed.) Establishing trust in the platform, however, is more than just
:802 creating the EK. The EK Credential and the Platform Credential must also be created and
:803 associated with the new EK as described above. (The conformance credentials may be
:804 obtained from the TPM and Platform manufacturer.) These credentials must be created by
:805 an entity that is trusted by those entities interested in the trust of the platform. This may
:806 not be a trivial task. For example, an entity willing to create these credentials my want to
:807 examine the platform and require physical access during the new EK generation process.

:808 Besides calling one of the two EK creation functions to create the EK, the EK may be
:809 "squirted" into the TPM by an external source. If this method is used, tight controls must be
:810 placed on the process used to perform this function to prevent exposure or intentional
:811 duplication of the EK. Since the revocation and re-creation of the EK are functions intended
:812 to be performed after the TPM leaves the trusted manufacturing process, squirting of the EK
:813 must be disallowed if the revoke trust command is executed.

:814 **End of informative comment**

:815 1. The TPM MUST not allow both the TPM_CreateRevocableEK and the
:816 TPM_CreateEndorsementKeyPair functions to be operational.

:817 2. After an EK is created the TPM MUST NOT allow a new EK to be "squirted" for the
:818 lifetime of the TPM.

:819 3. The EK Credential MUST provide an indication within the EK Credential as to how the
:820 EK was created. The valid permutations are:

:821 a. Squirted, non-revocable

:822 b. Squirted, revocable

- .823 c. Internally generated, non-revocable
- .824 d. Internally generated, revocable
- .825 4. If the method for creating the EK during manufacturing is squiring the EK may be either
- .826 non-revocable or revocable. If it is revocable, the method must provide the insertion or
- .827 extraction of the EKreset value.

.828 **39. Mandatory and Optional Functional Blocks**

.829 **Start of informative comment**

.830 This section lists the main functional blocks of a TPM (in arbitrary order), states whether
.831 that block is mandatory or optional in the main TPM specification, and provides brief
.832 justification for that choice.

.833 Important notes:

.834 1. The default classification of a TPM function block is “mandatory”, since reclassification
.835 from mandatory to optional enables the removal of a function from existing
.836 implementations, while reclassification from optional to mandatory may require the addition
.837 of functionality to existing implementations.

.838 2. Mandatory functions will be reclassified as optional functions if those functions are not
.839 required in some particular type of TCG trusted platform.

.840 3. If a functional block is mandatory in the main specification, the functionality must be
.841 present in all TCG trusted platforms.

.842 4. If a functional block is optional in the main specification, each individual platform-
.843 specific specification must declare the status of that functionality as either (1) “mandatory-
.844 specific” (the functionality must be present in all platforms of that type), or (2) “optional-
.845 specific” (the functionality is optional in that type of platform), or (3) “excluded-specific” (the
.846 functionality must not be present in that type of platform).

.847 **End of informative comment**

.848 Classification of TPM functional blocks

.849 1. Legacy (v1.1b) features

.850 a. Anything that was mandatory in v1.1b continues to be mandatory in v1.2. Anything
.851 that was optional in v1.1b continues to be optional in v1.2.

.852 b. V1.2 must be backwards compatible with v1.1b. All TPM features in v1.1b were
.853 discussed in depth when v1.1b was written, and anything that wasn't thought
.854 strictly necessary was tagged as "optional".

.855 2. Number of PCRs

.856 a. The platform specific specification controls the number of PCR on a platform. The
.857 TPM MUST implement the mandatory number of PCR specified for a particular
.858 platform

.859 i. TPMs designed to work on multiple platforms MUST provide the appropriate
.860 number of TPM for all intended platforms. I.e. if one platform requires 16 PCR
.861 and the other platform 24 the TPM would have to supply 24 PCR.

.862 b. For TPMs providing backwards compatibility with 1.1 TPM on the PC platform, there
.863 MUST be 16 static PCR.

.864 3. Sessions

.865 a. The TPM MUST support a minimum of 3 active sessions

.866 i. Active means currently loaded and addressable inside the TPM

- .867 ii. Without 3 active sessions many TPM commands cannot function
- .868 b. The TPM MUST support a minimum of 16 concurrent sessions
- .869 i. The contextList of currently available session has a minimum size of 16
- .870 ii. Providing for more concurrent sessions allows the resource manager additional
- .871 flexibility and speed
- .872 4. NVRAM
- .873 a. There are 20 bytes mandatory of NVRAM in v1.2 as specified by the main
- .874 specification. A platform specific specification can require a larger amount of NVRAM
- .875 b. Cost is important. The mandatory amount of NVRAM must be as small as possible,
- .876 because different platforms will require different amounts of NVRAM. 20 bytes are
- .877 required for (DIR) backwards compatibility with v1.1b.
- .878 5. New key types
- .879 a. The new signing keys are mandatory in v1.2 because they plug a security hole.
- .880 6. Direct Anonymous Attestation
- .881 a. This is optional in v1.2
- .882 b. Cost is important. The DAA function consumes more TPM resources than any other
- .883 TPM function, but some platform specific specifications (some servers, for example)
- .884 may have no need for the anonymity and pseudonymity provided by DAA.
- .885 7. Transport sessions
- .886 a. These are mandatory in v1.2.
- .887 b. Transport sessions
- .888 i. Enable protection of data submitted to a TPM and produced by a TPM
- .889 ii. Enable proof of the TPM commands executed during an arbitrary session.
- .890 8. Resettable Endorsement Key
- .891 a. This is optional in v1.2
- .892 b. Cost is important. Resettable EKs are valuable in some markets segments, but cause
- .893 more complexity than non-resettable EKs, which are expected to be the dominant
- .894 type of EK
- .895 9. Monotonic Counter
- .896 a. This is mandatory in v1.2
- .897 b. A monotonic counter is essential to enable software to defeat certain types of attack,
- .898 by enabling it to determine the version (revision) of dynamic data.
- .899 10. Time Ticks
- .900 a. This is mandatory in v1.2
- .901 b. Time stamping is a function that is potentially beneficial to both a user and system
- .902 software.
- .903 11. Delegation (includes DSAP)

- .904 a. This is mandatory in v1.2
- .905 b. Delegation enables the well-established principle of least privilege to be applied to
- .906 Owner authorized commands.
- .907 12.GPIO
- .908 a. This is optional in v1.2
- .909 b. Cost is important. Not all types of platform will require a secure intra-platform
- .910 method of key distribution
- .911 13.Locality
- .912 a. The use of locality is optional in v1.2
- .913 b. The structures that define locality are mandatory
- .914 c. Locality is an essential part of many (new) TPM commands, but the definition of
- .915 locality varies widely from platform to platform, and may not be required by some
- .916 types of platforms.
- .917 d. It is mandatory that a platform specific specification indicate the definitions of
- .918 locality on the platform. It is perfectly reasonable to only define one locality and
- .919 ignore all other uses of locality on a platform
- .920 14.TPM-audit
- .921 a. This is optional in v1.2
- .922 b. Proper TPM-audit requires support to reliably store logs and control access to the
- .923 TPM, and any mechanism (an OS, for example) that could provide such support is
- .924 potentially capable of providing an audit log without using TPM-audit. Nevertheless,
- .925 TPM-audit might be useful to verify operation of any and all software, including an
- .926 OS. TPM-audit is believed to be of no practical use in a client, but might be valuable
- .927 in a server, for example.
- .928 15.Certified Migration
- .929 a. This is optional in v1.2
- .930 b. Cost is important. Certified Migration enables a business model that may be
- .931 nonsense for some platforms.

.932 **40. Optional Authentication Encryption**

.933 **Start of informative comment**

.934 The standard authorization encryption mechanism is to use XOR. This is sufficient for
.935 almost all use models. There may be additional use models where a different encryption
.936 mechanism would be beneficial. This section adds an optional encryption mechanism for
.937 those authorizations.

.938 The encryption algorithm is either AES or 3DES. The key and IV for the encryption uses the
.939 shared secret generated with the OSAP session.

.940 **End of informative comment**

- .941 1. The TPM MAY support AES or 3DES encryption of AuthData secrets
 - .942 a. Encrypted AuthData values occur in the following commands
 - .943 i. TPM_CreateWrapKey
 - .944 ii. TPM_ChangeAuth
 - .945 iii. TPM_ChangeAuthOwner
 - .946 iv. TPM_Seal
 - .947 v. TPM_Sealx
 - .948 vi. TPM_MakeIdentity
 - .949 vii. TPM_CreateCounter
 - .950 viii. TPM_CMK_CreateKey
 - .951 ix. TPM_NV_DefineSpace
 - .952 x. TPM_Delegate_CreateKeyDelegation
 - .953 xi. TPM_Delegate_CreateOwnerDelegation
- .954 2. The user indicates the use of the optional encryption by using a different entity type
.955 during the OSAP session creation.
 - .956 a. The upper byte of the entity type indicates the encryption algorithm.
 - .957 b. The TPM internally stores the encryption indication as part of the session and
.958 enforces the encryption choice on all subsequent uses of the session.
 - .959 c. When TPM_ENTITY_TYPE is used for ordinals other than TPM_OSAP or TPM_DSAP
.960 (i.e., for cases where there is no ADIP encryption action), the TPM_ENTITY_TYPE
.961 upper byte MUST be 0x00.
- .962 3. If TPM_PERMANENT_FLAGS -> FIPS is TRUE
 - .963 a. Then all encrypted authorizations MUST use AES
- .964 4. The key for the encryption algorithm is the OSAP shared secret.
 - .965 a. For AES128, the key is the first 16 bytes of the OSAP shared secret
 - .966 i. There is no support for AES keys greater than 128
- .967 5. The IV is SHA-1 of (authLastNonceEven || nonceOdd)

- .968 a. For AES128, use the first 16 bytes of the IV
- .969 i. TPM_CreateWrapKey also uses nonceOdd for the IV

.970 **41. 1.1a and 1.2 Differences**

.971 **Start of informative comment**

.972 All 1.2 TPM commands are completely compliant with 1.1b commands with the following
.973 known exceptions.

- .974 1. TSC_PhysicalPresence does not support configuration and usage in a single step.
.975 2. TPM_GetPubKey is unable to read the SRK unless TPM_PERMANENT_FLAGS ->
.976 readSRKPub is TRUE
.977 3. TPM_SetTempDeactivated now requires either physical presence or TPM Operators
.978 authorization to execute
.979 4. TPM_OwnerClear does not modify TPM_PERMANENT_DATA -> authDIR[0].

.980 **End of informative comment**